

The Project Gutenberg eBook of A Middle High German Primer

This ebook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this ebook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you'll have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: A Middle High German Primer

Author: Joseph Wright

Release date: September 16, 2007 [eBook #22636]

Language: English

Credits: Produced by Louise Hope, David Starner and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net>

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK A MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN PRIMER ***

This e-text includes characters that will only display in UTF-8 (Unicode) file encoding:

ā ē ī ō ū (long vowels, printed with macron/overline)
ė (e with dot under, used in reading passages)
ż (z with hook)

A few additional characters are used only in the historical introduction, and may be disregarded if they present problems, as may the two or three Greek words:

ḃ, ζ, χ, η (b with line through stem; ezh; chi; eng)

If any of these characters do not display properly—in particular, if the diacritic does not appear directly above the letter—or if the apostrophes and quotation marks in this paragraph appear as garbage, you may have an incompatible browser or unavailable fonts. First, make sure that the browser's "character set" or "file encoding" is set to Unicode (UTF-8). You may also need to change your browser's default font.

Punctuation in the Glossary has been silently regularized. Typographical errors are shown with mouse-hover popups.

A

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN PRIMER

WITH

GRAMMAR, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY

BY

JOSEPH WRIGHT

M.A., PH.D., D.C.L., LL.D., LITT.D.
FELLOW OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY
CORPUS CHRISTI PROFESSOR OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

THIRD EDITION

RE-WRITTEN AND ENLARGED

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1917

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK
TORONTO MELBOURNE BOMBAY
HUMPHREY MILFORD
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

EXTRACTS FROM THE PREFACES TO THE FIRST AND SECOND EDITIONS

iii

THE present book has been written in the hope that it will serve as an elementary introduction to the larger German works on the subject from which I have appropriated whatever seemed necessary for the purpose. In the grammar much aid has been derived from Paul's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, second edition, Halle, 1884, and Weinhold's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, second edition, Paderborn, 1883. The former work, besides containing by far the most complete syntax, is also the only Middle High German Grammar which is based on the present state of German Philology.... I believe that the day is not far distant when English students will take a much more lively interest in the study of their own and the other Germanic languages (especially German and Old Norse) than has hitherto been the case. And if this little book should contribute anything towards furthering the cause, it will have amply fulfilled its purpose.

LONDON: *January, 1888.*

WHEN I wrote the preface to the first edition of this primer in 1888, I ventured to predict that the interest of English students in the subject would grow and develop as time went on, but I hardly expected that it would grow so much that a second edition of the book would be required within so short a period. It has been revised throughout, and several changes have been made in the phonology, but I have not thought it advisable to alter the general plan and scope of the former edition. After many years of personal experience as a teacher and examiner in the older periods of the German language, I have become firmly convinced that the larger books on the subject contain too many details for beginners. I feel sure that the easiest and best way to acquire a thorough knowledge of Middle High German is to start with an elementary book like the present, and then to learn the details of the grammar, especially the phonology of the various dialects, from a more advanced work.

iv

OXFORD: *December, 1898.*

v

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN the preparation of the new edition, I have steadily kept in view the class of students for whom the book was originally written. When the first edition appeared twenty-eight years ago, there were very few students in this country who took up the serious study of the older periods of the various Germanic languages at the Universities. In late years, however, the interest in the study of these languages has grown so much that Honour Courses and Examinations in them have been established at all our Universities. The result is that a book even intended for beginners can now reasonably be expected to be of a higher standard than the previous editions of this Primer. The grammatical introduction has accordingly been entirely rewritten and expanded to more than twice its original size. The texts have also been nearly doubled by the addition of eighteen poems from Walther von der Vogelweide, and selections from Reinmar, Ulrich von Lichtenstein, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

The greater part of Middle High German literature is so excellent and interesting that most students, who have mastered the grammatical introduction and read the texts in the Primer, will doubtless desire to continue the subject. Such students should procure a copy of either the *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik* by Hermann Paul, eighth edition, Halle, 1911, or the *Mittelhochdeutsches Elementarbuch* by Victor Michels, second edition, Heidelberg, 1912, where the Grammar, especially the phonology and syntax, can be studied in greater detail. They should also procure a copy of the *Mittelhochdeutsches Taschenwörterbuch* by Matthias Lexer, tenth edition, Leipzig, 1910, and also have access to the two standard Middle High German dictionaries — *Mittelhochdeutsches Wörterbuch mit Benutzung des Nachlasses von Georg Friedrich Benecke*, ausgearbeitet von Wilhelm Müller und Friedrich Zarncke, drei Bände, Leipzig, 1854-61, and *Mittelhochdeutsches Wörterbuch*, von Matthias Lexer, zugleich als Supplement und alphabetischer Index zum *Mittelhochdeutschen Wörterbuch* von Benecke-Müller-Zarncke, drei Bände, Leipzig, 1872-78. An excellent bibliography of the best editions of the Middle High German texts— classified according to the dialects in which they were written— will be found on

vi

CONTENTS

	PAGES
INTRODUCTION	1
The classification of the MHG. dialects (§ 1).	
CHAPTER I	
THE VOWELS	2-22
The MHG. alphabet (§ 2). Pronunciation of the MHG. vowels (§ 3). Phonetic survey of the MHG. vowel-system (§ 4). The OHG. equivalents of the MHG. vowels (§ 5). The characteristic differences between OHG. and MHG. (§ 6). The weakening of unaccented vowels (§§ 7-8). The loss of unaccented vowels (§ 9). Umlaut (§ 10). The MHG. equivalents of the OHG. vowels (§ 11). Ablaut (§ 12). Other vowel changes (§§ 13-18).	
CHAPTER II	
THE CONSONANTS	22-35
Pronunciation of the consonants (§§ 19-20). Phonetic survey of the MHG. consonants (§ 21). Characteristic differences between High German and the other West Germanic languages (§ 22). The High German sound-shifting (§§ 23-7). The interchange between pf, b and f; k, g and h; zz, z and ss, s (§ 28). The loss of the guttural nasal ŋ (§ 29). Verner's Law (§ 30). The doubling of consonants (§ 31). The simplification of double consonants (§ 32). The interchange between the lenes and the fortes (§ 33). Interchange between medial h and final ch (§ 34). Initial and medial j (§ 35). Medial and final w (§ 36). The loss of intervocalic b, d, g (§ 37). The loss of intervocalic h (§ 38). The loss of final r (§ 39). The change of medial t to d after nasals and l (§ 40).	
CHAPTER III	
DECLENSION OF NOUNS	36-46
Introductory remarks (§ 41).	
A. The vocalic or strong declension:— Masculine nouns (§§ 42-5); Neuter nouns (§§ 46-7); Feminine nouns (§§ 48-9).	
B. The weak declension (§§ 50-3).	
C. Declension of proper names (§ 54).	
CHAPTER IV	
ADJECTIVES	46-52
A. The declension of adjectives (§§ 55-6).	
B. The comparison of adjectives (§§ 57-9).	
C. The formation of adverbs from adjectives (§§ 60-1).	
D. Numerals (§§ 62-4).	
CHAPTER V	
PRONOUNS	53-57
Personal (§ 65). Reflexive (§ 66). Possessive (§ 67). Demonstrative (§ 68). Relative (§ 69). Interrogative (§ 70). Indefinite (§ 71).	
CHAPTER VI	
VERBS	57-75
Classification of MHG. verbs (§ 72).	
A. Strong verbs:— The conjugation of the model strong verb nēmen (§§ 73-4). Class I (§§ 76-7). Class II (§§ 78-80). Class III (§ 81). Class IV (§ 82). Class V (§§ 83-4). Class VI (§§ 85-6). Class VII (§ 87).	
B. Weak Verbs:—Classification of MHG. weak verbs (§§ 88-9). Class I (§ 90). Class II (§ 92).	
C. Minor groups.— Preterite-presents (§ 93). Anomalous verbs (§§ 94-8). Contracted verbs (§ 99).	
CHAPTER VII	
SYNTAX	75-78
Cases (§§ 100-2). Adjectives (§ 103). Pronouns (§ 104). Verbs (§§ 105-7). Negation (§ 108).	

TEXTS:—

I. Berthold von Regensburg	79-83
II. The Swabian Lantrehtbuoch	83-85
III. Hartman von Ouwe	86-116
IV. Walther von der Vogelweide	116-133
V. Reinmar	133-139
VI. Ulrich von Lichtenstein	140-148
VII. Das Nibelungen-Lied	149-158
VIII. Wolfram von Eschenbach	158-168

NOTES	169-171
-------	---------

GLOSSARY	172-213
----------	---------

ABBREVIATIONS, ETC.

x

Goth.	= Gothic
Gr.	= Greek
HG.	= High German
Lat.	= Latin
MHG.	= Middle High German
NHG.	= New High German
OE.	= Old English
OHG.	= Old High German
OS.	= Old Saxon
P. Germ.	= Primitive Germanic
UF.	= Upper Franconian
UG.	= Upper German

The asterisk * prefixed to a word denotes a theoretical form, as MHG. **wärmen** from ***warmjan**, to warm.

In representing prehistoric forms the following signs are used:— **þ** (= **th** in Engl. **thin**), **ð** (= **th** in Engl. **then**), **ʰ** (= a bilabial spirant, which may be pronounced like the **v** in Engl. **vine**), **ʒ** (= **g** often heard in German **sagen**), **χ** (= NHG. **ch** and the **ch** in Scotch **loch**), **ŋ** (= **n** in Engl. **sunk**).

1

GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN

§ 1.

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN (MHG.) embraces the High German language from about the year 1100 to 1500. It is divided into three great dialect-groups: Upper German, Franconian, and East Middle German.

1. Upper German is divided into: (a) Alemanic, embracing High Alemanic (Switzerland), and Low Alemanic (South Baden, Swabia, and Alsace). (b) Bavarian, extending over Bavaria and those parts of Austria where German is spoken.

2. Franconian (West Middle German), which is subdivided into Upper Franconian and Middle Franconian. Upper Franconian consists of East Franconian (the old duchy of Francia Orientalis) and Rhenish Franconian (the old province of Francia Rhinensis), Middle Franconian extending over the district along the banks of the Moselle and of the Rhine from Coblenz to Düsseldorf.

3. East Middle German, extending over: Thuringia, Upper Saxony, and Silesia.

Since it is impossible to deal with all these dialects in an elementary book like the present, we shall confine ourselves almost exclusively to Upper German, and shall only deal with that period of Middle High German which extends from about 1200 to 1300.

2

PHONOLOGY

CHAPTER I

THE VOWELS

§ 2. MHG. had the following simple vowels and diphthongs:—

Short vowels **a, ä, ë, e, i, o, u, ö, ü.**

Long vowels **ā, æ, ē, ī, ō, ū, œ, iu.**
 Diphthongs **ei, ie, ou, uo, öu (eu), üe.**

NOTE.— **ë** represents primitive Germanic **e** (= Gr. ε, Lat. **e**, as in Gr. δέκα, Lat. **decem**, MHG. **zēhen, ten**) and is generally written **ë** in Old and Middle High German grammars, in order to distinguish it from the OHG. umlaut-**e** (§ 10). The former was an open sound like the **e** in English **bed**, whereas the latter was a close sound like the **é** in French **été**. **ā** was a very open sound nearly like the **a** in English **hat**, and arose in MHG. from the **i**-umlaut of **a** (§ 10). Good MHG. poets do not rhyme Germanic **ë** with the umlaut-**e**, and the distinction between the two sounds is still preserved in many NHG. dialects. In like manner the modern Bavarian and Austrian dialects still distinguish between **ā** and **ë**. In the MHG. period **ā, ë, and e** were kept apart in Bavarian, but in Alemanic and Middle German **ā** and **ë** seem to have fallen together in **ë** or possibly **ā**, as the two sounds frequently rhyme with each other in good poets. MHG. texts do not always preserve in writing the distinction between the old umlaut-**e** and the MHG. umlaut-**ā**, both being often written **e** in the same text.

3

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

§ 3. The approximate pronunciation of the above vowels and diphthongs was as follows:—

a as in	NHG. <i>mann</i>	man, man.
ā „ „	Engl. <i>father</i>	hāt, has.
ä „ „	„ <i>man</i>	mäh̄te, powers.
æ „ „	„ <i>air</i>	lære, empty.
ë „ „	„ <i>men</i>	hël̄fen, to help.
e „ „	Fr. <i>été</i>	geste, guests.
ē „ „	NHG. <i>reh</i>	sē, sea.
i „ „	Engl. <i>bit</i>	biten, to beg.
ī „ „	„ <i>ween</i>	wīn, wine.
o „ „	„ <i>pot</i>	golt, gold.
ō „ „	NHG. <i>tot</i>	tōt, dead.
u „ „	Engl. <i>put</i>	guldīn, golden.
ū „ „	„ <i>fool</i>	hūs, house.
ö „ „	NHG. <i>löcher</i>	löcher, holes.
œ „ „	„ <i>schön</i>	schoene, beautiful.
ü „ „	„ <i>füllen</i>	vüllen, to fill.
iu „ „	„ <i>müde</i>	hiuser, houses.
ei	= e + i	stein, stone.
ie	= i + e	kn̄ie, knee.
ou	= o + u	ouge, eye.
öu (eu)	= ö or e + ü	dröuwen, to threaten.
üe	= ü + e	grüezen, to greet.
uo	= u + o	bruoder, brother.

To the above list should be added the MHG. **e** in unaccented syllables, which mostly arose from the weakening of the OHG. full vowels, as OHG. **zunga, tongue, hirti, shepherd, namo, name, fridu, peace** = MHG. **zunge, hirte, name, fride**; OHG. **habēn, to have, scōni, beauty, salbōn, to anoint, zungūn, tongues** = MHG. **haben, schōne, salben, zungen**. The **e** in this position was pronounced like the **-e** in NHG. **zunge, name, friede, &c.**

4

PHONETIC SURVEY OF THE MHG. VOWEL-SYSTEM.

§ 4.

Palatal	{ Short ä, ë, e, i, ö, ü.
	{ Long æ, ē, ī, œ, iu (= ü).
Guttural	{ Short a, o, u.
	{ Long ā, ō, ū.

THE OHG. EQUIVALENTS OF THE MHG. VOWELS.

§ 5. The following are the OHG. equivalents of the MHG. short vowels, long vowels and diphthongs of accented syllables:—

1. The short vowels **a, ë, e, i, o, u** = the corresponding OHG. short vowels, as **tac, day, gast, quest, bant, he bound, gap, he gave** = OHG. **tag, gast, bant, gab.**

wēc, way, nēmen, to take, zēhen, ten = OHG. **wēg, nēman, zēhan.**

geste, guests, lemb̄er, lambs, vert, he goes = OHG. **gesti, lembir, ferit.**

wizzen, to know, hilfe, I help, visch, fish = OHG. **wizzan, hilf̄u, fisk.**

got, God, wol, well, geholfen, helped = OHG. **got, wola, giholfan.**

sun, son, wurm, worm, gebunden, bound = OHG. **sunu, wurm, gibuntan.**

ä is the umlaut of **a** before certain consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place in OHG., as **mäh̄te**, *powers*, **häh̄tet**, *he holds*, **wär̄men**, *to warm* = OHG. **mahti**, **haltit**, **warmen** from ***warmjan** (§ 10). It also occurs in derivatives ending in **-lich** and **-lin**, as **mäh̄lich**, *manly*, **täh̄gelich**, *daily*, **väterlin**, *dim. of vater, father*; and in words which originally had an **i** in the third syllable, the vowel of the second syllable having become **i** by assimilation, as **mäh̄gede**, *maids*, **zäh̄er(e)**, *tears* = OHG. **magadi**, **zahari**.

ö is the umlaut of OHG. **o**, as **löh̄er**, *holes*, **möh̄te**, *I might* = OHG. **loh̄hir**, **mohti**; **götinne**, *goddess*, beside **got**, *God*.

ü is the umlaut of OHG. **u**, as **düh̄ne**, *thin*, **süh̄ne**, *sons*, **züh̄ge**, *I might draw* = OHG. **dunni**, **sunni**, **zuḡi**.

2. The long vowels **ā**, **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū** = the corresponding OHG. long vowels, as **sāt**, *seed*, **slāfen**, *to sleep*, **nāmen**, *we took*, **däh̄te**, *he thought* = OHG. **sāt**, **slāfan**, **nāmum**, **däh̄ta**.

sēle, *soul*, **mēre**, *more*, **lēren**, *to teach* = OHG. **sēla**, **mēro**, **lēren**.

wīp, *wife*, **sīn**, *his*, **bīzen**, *to bite* = OHG. **wīb**, **sīn**, **bīzan**.

ōre, *ear*, **tōt**, *death*, **kōs**, *I chose* = OHG. **ōra**, **tōd**, **kōs**.

hūs, *house*, **tūsant**, *thousand*, **düh̄te**, *it seemed* = OHG. **hūs**, **dūsunt**, **düh̄ta**.

æ is the umlaut of OHG. **ā**, as **lære**, *empty*, **næme**, *thou tookest* = OHG. **lāri**, **nāmi**.

œ is the umlaut of OHG. **ō**, as **schoene**, *beautiful*, **hœher**, *higher*, **hœren**, *to hear* = OHG. **scōni**, **hōhiro**, **hōren** from ***hōrjan** older ***hausjan**.

iu = (1) OHG. **iu** (diphthong), as **liute**, *people*, **kiuset**, *he chooses* = OHG. **liuti**, **kiusit**.

= (2) the umlaut of OHG. **ū**, as **hiuser**, *houses*, **bruite**, *brides* = OHG. **hūsir**, **brūti**.

3. The diphthongs **ei**, **ou**, **uo** = the corresponding OHG. diphthongs, as **bein**, *bone*, **leiten**, *to lead*, **schreip**, *I wrote* = OHG. **bein**, **leiten**, **screib**.

ouge, *eye*, **houbet**, *head*, **bouc**, *I bent* = OHG. **ouga**, **houbit**, **boug**.

bruoder, *brother*, **stuont**, *I stood*, **vuor**, *I went* = OHG. **bruoder**, **stuont**, **fuor**.

ie = (1) OHG. **ie** (diphthong) older **ia**, **ea**, **ē** (Germanic **ē**), as **hier**, *here*, **miete**, *pay, reward*, **gienc**, *I went* = OHG. **hier**, **mieta**, **gieng**.

= (2) OHG. **io** (Germanic **eu**), as **bieten**, *to offer*, **liep**, *dear* = OHG. **biotān**, **liob**.

= (3) the OHG. **io** which occurs in the preterite of the old reduplicated verbs whose presents have **ou**, **ō**, **uo** (§ 87), as inf. **loufen**, *to run*, **stōzen**, *to push*, **ruofen**, *to call*, preterite **lief**, **stiez**, **rief** = OHG. **liof**, **stioz**, **riof**.

= (4) Upper German **iu** (OHG. **io**) before labials and gutturals, as **liup**, *dear*, **tiuf**, *deep*, **siuch**, *sick*, **liugen**, *to tell a lie* = **liep**, **tief**, **siech**, **liegen**.

öu (**eu**) is the umlaut of OHG. **ou**, as **löh̄uber**, *leaves*, **löh̄fel**, *runner* = OHG. **loubir**, **loufil**.

üe is the umlaut of OHG. **uo**, as **grüene**, *green*, **güete**, *goodness*, **vüere**, *thou didst go* = OHG. **gruoni**, **guoti**, **fuori**.

UNACCENTED VOWELS AND UMLAUT.

§ 6. The two most characteristic differences between OHG. and MHG. are: (1) the spread of umlaut (§ 10); (2) the weakening and partial loss of vowels in unaccented syllables.

1. THE WEAKENING OF UNACCENTED VOWELS.

§ 7. The short vowels **a**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and the long vowels **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū** were weakened to **e**. This **e** was pronounced like the final **-e** in NHG. **leute**, see § 3. Examples are:—

gēba, *gift*, **hērza**, *heart*, **zunga**, *tongue*, **taga**, *days* = MHG. **gēbe**, **hērze**, **zunge**, **tage**; **heilag**, *holy*, neut. **blindaz**, *blind*, **nēman**, *to take* = MHG. **heilec**, **blindez**, **nēmen**.

kunni, *race, generation*, **gesti**, *guests* = MHG. **künne**, **geste**; **kuning**, *king*, **bezzisto**, *best*, dat. pl. **gestim**, *to guests*, gen. pl. **lembiro**, *of lambs*, **nimit**, *he takes* = MHG. **künec**, **bezzest** (**beste**), **gesten**, **lember(e)**, **nimet**.

haso, *hare*, nom. acc. pl. fem. **blinto**, *blind*, gen. pl. **tago**, *of days* = MHG. **hase**, **blinde**, **tage**; acc. sing. **hason**, *hare* = MHG. **hasen**.

fridu, *peace*, dat. sing. **gēbu**, *to a gift*, **nimu**, *I take* = MHG. **fride**, **gēbe**, **nime**; dat. pl. **tagum**, *to days*, **nāmum**, *we took* = MHG. **tagen**, **nāmen**.

Nom. sing. masc. **blintēr**, *blind*, **unsēr**, *our*, **habēn**, *to have*, **nēmēm**, *we may take* = MHG. **blinder**, **unser**, **haben**, **nēmen**.

scōnī, *beauty* = MHG. **schoene**; **sālig**, *blessed*, **nāmīm**, *we might take* = MHG. **sælec**, **nāmen**.

salbōn, *to anoint*, **suohtōs(t)**, *thou soughtest*, dat. pl. **gēbōm**, **hērzōm** = MHG. **salben**, **suohtes(t)**, **gēben**, **hērzen**.

Gen. dat. acc. sing., nom. acc. pl. **zungūn** = MHG. **zungen**.

§ 8. The vowel in suffixal and derivative syllables was generally weakened to **e** just as in the

inflexional syllables, but in some suffixal and derivative syllables which had a secondary accent the vowel was not weakened to **e**. This was especially the case with derivatives in **-ære** (denoting nomina agentis), **-inne**, **-inc (-ing)**, **linc (-ling)**, diminutives in **-in** and **-lin**, abstract nouns in **-nisse (-nusse, -nüsse)**, **-unge**. In others the vowel fluctuated between the full vowel and **e**, as in **-isch** beside **-esch**; **-ic** (= OHG. **-ag**, and **-ig**) beside **-ec**; superlative of adjectives **-ist** (= OHG. **-ist**) beside **-est** (= OHG. **-ōst**); **-sal** beside **-sel**. Beside the full forms **-lich**, **-rich** occurred the shortened forms **-lich**, **-rich**.

The OHG. endings of the present participle **-anti**, **-enti**, **-ōnti**, **ēnti** regularly became **-ende**, but **-ant** occurs in a few old participles which had become nouns, as **heilant**, *Saviour*, **wigant**, *warrior*, **viant** beside **vient (vint)**, *fiend*, *enemy*. Examples are: **gartenære**, *gardener*, **schepfære**, *creator*, **schribære**, *scribe*.

küeginne, *queen*, **vriundinne**, *female friend*, **wirtinne**, *mistress*.

edelinc, *son of a nobleman*, **hendelinc**, *glove*, **vingerlinc**, *ring*; **müedinc**, *unhappy man*.

magedin, *little girl*, **vingerin**, *ring*; **kindelin**, *little child*, **vogelin**, *little bird*.

hindernisse, *hindrance*, **verdërbnisse**, *destruction*, **vinsternisse**, *darkness*, **vancnüsse**, *captivity*.

bezzeringe, *improvement*, **handelunge**, *action*, **mældunge**, *announcement*.

himelisch, *heavenly*, **irdisch**, *earthly*, **kindisch**, *childish*, beside **-esch**.

heilic (OHG. **heilag**), *holy*, **honic** (OHG. **honag**, **honig**), *honey*, **künic** (OHG. **cuning**, **cunig**), *king*, **manic** (OHG. **manag**), *many a*, **sælic** (OHG. **sālig**), *blessed*, beside **-ec**.

oberist beside **oberest**, *highest*.

kumbersal, *distress*, **trüebisal**, *gloom*, **wëhsal** beside **wëhsel**, *change*.

bitterlich, *bitterly*, **sicherlich**, *surely*, **wislich**, *wisely*, beside **-lich**.

Dietrich, **Heinrich**, beside **-rich**.

The OHG. pronominal ending of the nom. sing. fem. and the nom. acc. pl. neuter remained unweakened, as OHG. **blintiu** = MHG. **blindiu** (§ 55).

2. THE LOSS OF UNACCENTED VOWELS.

§ 9. The weakened **e** regularly disappeared:—

1. After **l** and **r** in dissyllables with short stems, as **ar**, older **are** (OHG. **aro**), *eagle*, acc. gen. dat. **arn**, beside **name**, *name*, **namen**; **wol**, older **wole** (OHG. **wola**), *well*; **gar** (OHG. **garo**), *ready*, **milch** (OHG. **milih**), *milk*, **zal** (OHG. **zala**), *number*; **kil**, *quill*, gen. **kil(e)s**, dat. **kil**, pl. nom. acc. **kil**, dat. **kil(e)n**, beside **tac**, *day*, gen. **tages**, dat. **tage**, pl. nom. acc. **tage**, dat. **tagen**; **bërn**, *to bear*, **stëln**, *to steal*, **nern**, *to rescue*, pres. sing. **stil**, **stils(t)**, **stilt**; **ner**, **ners(t)**, **nert**, beside **hœren**, *to hear*, pres. sing. **hœre**, **hœres(t)**, **hœret**.

2. After liquids and nasals in trisyllabic and polysyllabic forms with long stems, as **sælde** (OHG. **sālida**), *blessedness*, **hërsen**, **hërsen** (OHG. **hërisōn**), *to rule*, **zierde** (OHG. **ziarida**), *adornment*, **wandelte** (OHG. **wantalōta**), *I wandered*, **zwifeln** (OHG. **zwifalōn**), *to doubt*, **wundern** (OHG. **wuntarōn**), *to wonder*, **schönste** (OHG. **scōnisto**), *most beautiful*, **diente**, **diende** (OHG. **dionōta**), *I served*; **dienest**, *service*, gen. **dienstes**; **engel**, *angel*, gen. **engel(e)s**, dat. **engel(e)**, pl. nom. acc. gen. **engel(e)**, dat. **engel(e)n**, and similarly with words like **acker**, *acre*, **lüter**, *clear*, **buosem**, *bosom*, **heiden**, *heathen*; **grœzer** (OHG. **grōzīro**), *greater*, fem. dat. sing. **grœzer** (OHG. **grōzīru**); dat. sing. **blind(e)**, *blind*, **gotem(e)**, *good* = OHG. **blintemu**, **gotemu**; gen. pl. **blinder(e)** = OHG. **blintero**. After the analogy of forms with long stems it was also dropped in forms with short stems, as pl. **nagel**, *nails*, **vogel**, *birds*, beside **nagele**, **vogele**; **wider** beside **widere** (OHG. **widaro**), *wether*, dat. sing. **disem(e)**, *this*, **vadem(e)**, *thread*, gen. **vadem(e)s**.

There was however a strong tendency in MHG. for the medial vowel to disappear in trisyllabic forms with long stems irrespectively as to whether they contained a liquid or a nasal, as **market**, *market*, gen. **marktes**; **rīchsen** (OHG. **rīchisōn**), *to rule*, **ahte** (OHG. **ahtōta**), *he observed*, **wartte**, **warte** (OHG. **wartēta**), *he waited*, **vräge** beside **vräge** (OHG. **frāgēta**), *he asked*, **dante** beside **dankete** (OHG. **dankōta**), *he thanked*. See § 92.

3. In the medial syllable of trisyllabic forms with long stems having liquids or nasals in successive syllables, as **dīme** beside **dīneme** (OHG. **dīnemu**), dat. of **dīn**, *thy*; **eime** beside **ein(e)me** (OHG. **einemu**), dat. of **ein**, *one*; **hërre**, **hërre** (OHG. **hëriro**), *master*; **minre** beside **minner(e)** (OHG. **minniro**), *less*; **tiurre** (OHG. **tiuriro**), *dearer*.

4. Finally after a nasal, and medially after a nasal before a following **t**, in forms with short stems, as **han(e)**, *cock*, **nam(e)**, *name*, **sun** (OHG. **sun**, **sunu**), *son*, **won(e)**, *I dwell*; **man(e)t**, *he admonishes*, **won(e)t**, *he dwells*, **scham(e)t**, *he shames*, **nim(e)t**, *he takes*, **nëm(e)t**, *ye take*; pret. **won(e)te**, **scham(e)te**. In these and similar forms the **e** was often restored through the influence of forms which regularly preserved the **e**.

NOTE.— The **e**, when not preceded by a nasal, was sometimes dropped in verbal forms ending in **t**. This was especially the case in **wirst**, **wirt** older **wirdes(t)**, **wirdet**; **siht**, *he sees*, **sëht**, *ye see*, older **sihet**, **sëhet**; and often in forms like **gilt**, **vint**, **spricht**, **sticht** beside **giltet**, **vindet**, **sprichtet**, **stichet**.

5. The superlative of adjectives often has double forms, the one with the loss of the medial **e**, and

the other with the loss of the final **e**, as **beste**, *best*, **ērste**, *first*, **grøeste**, *greatest*, **leste**, *last*, **min(ne)ste**, *least*, **wir(se)ste**, *worst*, beside **bezzest(e)**, **ērest(e)**, **grøezest(e)**, **lezzest(e)**, **minnest(e)**, **wirsest(e)**, OHG. **bezzisto**, **ērsto**, **grōzisto**, **lezzisto**, **minnisto**, **wirsisto**.

6. In the unstressed forms of dissyllables, as adv. **ane**, **abe**, **mite**, **obe** beside the prepositions **an**, *on*, **ab**, *of*, **mit**, *with*, **ob**, *over*; dat. sing. **dēme**, **wēme**, **ime**, beside **dēm**, **wēm**, **im**; **unde**, *and*, **wande**, *for, because*, beside **und** (**unt**), **wan(d)**; **hērre**, **vrouwe**, beside **hēr**, **vrou** before proper names and titles.

7. The **e** in the unaccented verbal prefixes **be-**, **ge-** often disappeared before **l**, **n**, **r**, as **bliben**, *to remain*, **glich**, *like*, **glit**, *member*, **glouben**, *to believe*, **gnāde**, *favour*, **gnanne**, *namesake*, **gnuoge**, *many*, **grade**, *quick*, **grēch**, *straight*, beside **beliben**, **gelich**, **gelit**, **gelouben**, **genāde**, **genanne**, **genuoge**, **gerade**, **gerēch**; it disappeared before vowels during the OHG. period, as **bange**, *anxious*: **ange**, *anxiously*, **gēzzan** p.p. of **ēzzan**, *to eat*, **gunnan**, MHG. **gunnen**, **günnen**, *to grant*.

11

3. UMLAUT.

§ 10. By umlaut is meant the modification (palatalization) of an accented vowel through the influence of an **ī** or **j** which originally stood in the following syllable. The only vowel which underwent this change in OHG. was **a**, which became close **e** (§ 2, note).

The change is first met with in OHG. monuments about the middle of the eighth century. In the ninth century the process was practically complete except when the **a** was followed by certain consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place. These consonant combinations were:—

1. **ht**, **hs**, or consonant + **w**, as **maht**, *power*, pl. **mahti**; **wahsit**, *he grows*, inf. **wahsan**; **bi-scatwen** from ***-scatwjan**, *to shade*.

2. In Upper German before **l** + consonant, before **hh**, **ch** (= Germanic **k**), and often before **r** + consonant, and before **h** (= Germanic **h**), as Upper German **haltit** beside Upper Franconian **heltit**, *he holds*, inf. **haltan**; UG. **altiro** beside UF. **eltiro**, *older*; UG. **sachit** beside UF. **sehhit**, *he quarrels*, inf. **sachan**, Goth. **sakan**; UG. **warmen** beside **wermen**, Goth. **warmjan**, *to warm*; UG. **slahit** beside **slēhit**, *he strikes*, inf. OHG. **slahan**, Goth. **slahan**.

3. In words ending in **-nissi**, **-nissa**, or **-lih**, as **firstantnissi**, *understanding*; **infancnissa**, *assumption*; **kraftlih**, *strong*; **tagalih**, *daily*.

Umlaut must have taken place earlier in the spoken language than it is expressed in late OHG. and early MHG. manuscripts, because the **ī** which caused the umlaut was weakened to **e** in MHG. (§ 7) and **j** had disappeared except between vowels. The vowels and diphthongs which underwent umlaut in MHG. are **a**, **o**, **u**, **ā**, **ō**, **ū**, **ou**, **uo**. The umlaut of all these sounds was completed by about the year 1200.

12

a > e: **gast**, *guest*, pl. **geste** (OHG. **gesti**); **lamp**, *lamb*, pl. **lember** (OHG. **lembir**); inf. **graben**, *to dig*, pres. second and third pers. sing. **grebes(t)**, **grebet** (OHG. **grebis**, **grebit**); **lanc**, *long*, beside **lengē** (OHG. **lengī**), *length*; **brennen**, Goth. **brannjan**, *to burn*; **bette** (OHG. **beti**), *bed*.

a > ä: From the twelfth century onwards the umlaut of **a** also occurs—often beside forms without umlaut—in words containing the consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place in OHG., as pl. **māhte** (OHG. **mahti**), *powers*; **geslāhte** (OHG. **gislahti**), *race, generation*; **wāhset** (OHG. **wahsit**), *he grows*; **wārmēn** (OHG. **warmen**, older ***warmjan**), *to warm*; Upper German **älter** (OHG. **altiro**), *older*; **kälte** (OHG. **kalti**), *coldness*; **hāltet** (OHG. **haltit**), *he holds*; **āher** (OHG. **ahir**), *ear of corn*; **slāhet** (OHG. **slahit**), *he strikes*. It also occurs in derivatives ending in **-lich**, **-lin**, as **mānlich**, *manly*, **schāmelich**, *shameful*, **tāgelich**, *daily*, **vāterlich**, *fatherly*, **vāterlin**, dim. of **vater**, *father*. It is likewise met with in MHG. words which originally had an **ī** in the third syllable, the vowel of the second syllable having become **i** by assimilation, as **frāvele** (OHG. **frafali**), *bold*, pl. **māgede** (OHG. **magadi**), *maids*, pl. **zāher(e)** (OHG. **zahari**), *tears*. See § 2, Note.

o > ö: Although **ö**, the umlaut of **o**, is common in MHG. and still commoner in NHG., yet all words containing this umlaut are really new formations due to levelling or analogy, because primitive Germanic **u** (§ 15) did not become **o** in OHG. when followed by an **ī** or **j** in the next syllable. Examples are: **boc**, *he-goat*, beside dim. **böcklin** (OHG. **pochili**); **dorf**, *village*, beside pl. **dörfer**; **got**, *God*, beside **götinne**, *goddess*; **hof**, *court*, beside **hövesch**, *courtly*; **loch** (OHG. **loh**), *hole*, beside pl. **löcher** (OHG. **lohhir**); **tohter**, *daughter*, beside dim. **töhterlin**; pret. subj. **möhte** (OHG. **mohti**), *I might*; **törste** (OHG. **torsti**), *I might dare*.

13

u > ü: **dünne** (OHG. **dunni**), *thin*; **künne** (OHG. **kunni**), *race, generation*; pl. **süne** (OHG. **sunī**), *sons*; **tür** (OHG. **turi**), *door*; pret. subj. **züge** (OHG. **zugī**), inf. **ziehen**, *to draw*.

NOTE.— In Upper German certain consonant combinations often prevented umlaut from taking place where it might be expected. Of these the principal are:—

1. Before a liquid + consonant, as **hulde** (OHG. **huldī**), *favour*; **schuldec** (OHG. **sculdīg**), *guilty*; **gedultec** (OHG. **gidultīg**), *indulgent*; **burge** (OHG. **burgī**), dat. of **burc**, *city*; **sturbe** (OHG. **sturbi**), pret. subj. of **stērbēn**, *to die*; **wurfe** (OHG. **wurfi**), pret. subj. of **wērfēn**, *to throw*, cp. 2 above.

2. **u** fluctuates with **ü** when followed by a nasal + consonant, as **dunken**, *to seem*, **umbe**, *about*, **wunne**, *joy*, beside **dünken**, **ümbe** (OHG. **umbi**), **wünne**. This fluctuation is especially common in the pret. subjunctive, as **bunde**, **sunge**, beside **bünde**, **sünge**, inf. **binden**, *to bind*, **singen**, *to sing*.

3. **u** fluctuates with **ü** when followed by **gg**, **ck**, **pf**, **tz**, **zz**, **st**, **ch**, and **g**, as **brugge**, **brügge**, **brucke**,

brücke, *bridge*; **mugge**, **mügge**, **mucke**, **mücke**, *midge*; **drucken**, **drücken**, *to press*; **hupfen**, **hüpfen**, *to hop*; **schupfen**, **schüpfen**, *to push*; **nutzen**, **nützen**, *to use*; pret. subj. **fluzze**, **flüzze**; **schuzze**, **schüzze**, inf. **fliezen**, *to flow*, **schiezen**, *to shoot*; pl. **bruste**, **brüste**, *breasts*; **kuchen**, **küchen**, *kitchen*; pret. subj. **fluge**, **flüge**, inf. **fliegen**, *to fly*.

ā > **æ**: **lære** (OHG. **lāri**), *empty*; **mære** (OHG. **māri**), *renowned*; **sæjen** (OHG. **sājan**), *to sow*; pret. subj. **næme** (OHG. **nāmi**), pl. **næmen** (OHG. **nāmim**), inf. **nēmen**, *to take*.

ō > **œ**: **hœher** (OHG. **hōhiro**), *higher*; **hœhest** (OHG. **hōhisto**), *highest*; **hœren** (OHG. **hōren**, from older ***hōrjan**), *to hear*; **schœne** (OHG. **scōni**), *beautiful*.

ū > **iu**: pl. **briute** (OHG. **brūti**), *brides*; **hiuser** (OHG. **hūsir**), *houses*.

Traces of the umlaut of **ū**, written **iu** (= **ïu**), occur in late OHG. monuments of the tenth century. It is common in the writings of Notker († 1022), as **hiute** older **hūti**, *skins*; **chriuter** older **chrūtir**, *herbs*. In other writings of the tenth to the twelfth century the umlaut of **ū** is seldom found.

Umlaut did not take place in Upper German before a following **m**, as **rūmen** from ***rūmjan**, *to make room*; **sūmen** from ***sūmjan**, *to tarry*.

ou > **öu**, often written **eu**, rarely **oi**, **öi**: **löufel** (OHG. **loufil**), *runner*; **löuber** (OHG. **loubir**), *leaves*.

Umlaut of **ou** did not take place in the combination **ouw** = OHG. **ouw**, **auw**, West Germanic **aww**, primitive Germanic **awj**, as **frouwe** (OHG. **frouwa**, prim. Germanic ***frawjō-**), *woman*; **ouwe** (OHG. **ouwa**, **auwia**, prim. Germanic ***a(3)wjō-**), *meadow*; **frouwen** (OHG. **frouwen**, prim. Germanic ***frawjan**), *to rejoice*, and similarly **douwen**, *to digest*, **drouwen**, *to threaten*, **strouwen**, *to strew*. Forms like **fröuwen**, **döuwen**, **dröuwen**, **ströuwen** were analogical formations due to the influence of the pres. second and third pers. singular and the preterite which regularly had umlaut; see the Author's Historical German Grammar, § 232.

Umlaut of **ou** did not take place in Upper German before labials and **g**, as **erlouben**, *to allow*, **gelouben**, *to believe*, **houbet**, *head*, **koufen**, *to buy*, **troumen**, *to dream*, **toufen**, *to baptize*, **bougen**, *to bend*, **ougen**, *to show*, beside Middle German **erlöuben**, **gelöuben**, **höubet**, **köufen**, **tröumen**, **töufen**, **böugen**, **öugen**.

uo > **üe**: **grüene** (OHG. **gruoni**), *green*; **güete** (OHG. **guoti**), *goodness*; **vüeze** (OHG. **fuozi**), *feet*; pret. pl. subj. **vüeren** (OHG. **fuorim**), *we might go*, inf. **varn**, *to fare, go*; **buoch**, *book*, dim. **büechlīn**; **muoter**, *mother*, dim. **müeterlīn**.

THE MHG. EQUIVALENTS OF THE OHG. VOWELS.

§ 11. OHG. had the following short vowels, long vowels, and diphthongs:—

Short Vowels	a , e , ë ,	i ,	o ,	u .
Long Vowels	ā , ē ,	ī ,	ō ,	ū .
Diphthongs	ei ,	ie (ia, ea) ,	ou (au) ,	uo .
		io (eo) ,		
		iu .		

The following are the MHG. equivalents of the above simple vowels and diphthongs in accented syllables:—

1. The short vowels: Apart from the changes caused by umlaut, viz. **a** to **ä**, **o** to **ö**, **u** to **ü** (§ 10), and of **ë** to **e** before certain consonants, the OHG. short vowels remained in MHG., as

a = (1) MHG. **a**, as OHG. **fater**, *father*, **tag**, *day*, **faran**, *to go* = MHG. **vater**, **tac**, **varn**.

= (2) MHG. **ä**, in words containing the consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place in OHG., as OHG. **mahti**, *powers*, **kalti**, *coldness*, **ahir**, *ear of corn*, **warmen**, *to warm* = MHG. **mähte**, **kälte**, **äher**, **wärmen**, see § 10.

e = MHG. **e**, as OHG. **gesti**, *guests*, **lembir**, *lambs*, **brennen**, *to burn* = MHG. **geste**, **lembir**, **brennen**.

ë = (1) MHG. **ë**, as OHG. **wëg**, *way*, **hëlfan**, *to help*, **stëlan**, *to steal* = MHG. **wëc**, **hëlfen**, **stëln**.

= (2) MHG. **e**, before **st**, **sch**, and palatal **g**, as OHG. **nëst**, *nest*, **swëster**, *sister* = MHG. **nest**, **swester**; and similarly, **gestern**, *yesterday*, **deste**, *all the more*, **weste**, *I knew*, **dreschen**, *to thrash*, **leschen**, *to go out*, **degen**, *warrior*; and also in a few words before a following **l**, as **helm**, *helmet*, **vels**, *rock*, **welch**, *which*, &c.

i = MHG. **i**, as OHG. **fisk**, *fish*, **nimu**, *I take*, **wizzan**, *to know* = MHG. **visch**, **nime**, **wizzen**.

o = (1) MHG. **o**, as OHG. **got**, *God*, p.p. **giholfan**, *helped*, **tohter**, *daughter* = MHG. **got**, **geholfen**, **tohter**.

= (2) MHG. **ö**, as OHG. **lohkir**, *holes*, **mohti**, *I might* = MHG. **löcher**, **möhte**.

u = (1) MHG. **u**, as OHG. **sunu**, *son*, **butum**, *we offered*, **buntum**, *we bound* = MHG. **sun**, **buten**, **bunden**.

= (2) MHG. **ü**, as OHG. **dunni**, *thin*, **suni**, *sons* = MHG. **dünne**, **süne**.

2. The long vowels: Apart from the changes caused by umlaut, viz. **ā** to **æ**, **ō** to **œ**, and **ū** to **iu** (§ 10), the OHG. long vowels remained in MHG., as

ā = (1) MHG. **ā**, as OHG. **sāt**, *seed*, **slāfan**, *to sleep*, **dāhta**, *I thought* = MHG. **sāt**, **slāfen**, **dāhte**.

= (2) MHG. **æ**, as OHG. **lāri**, *empty*, **nāmi**, *I might take* = MHG. **lære**, **næme**.

ē = MHG. **ē**, as OHG. **ēra**, *honour*, **lēren**, *to teach*, **sēla**, *soul* = MHG. **ēre**, **lēren**, **sēle**.

ī = MHG. **ī**, as OHG. **sīn**, *his*, **wīb**, *woman*, **snīdan**, *to cut* = MHG. **sīn**, **wīp**, **snīden**.

ō = (1) MHG. **ō**, as OHG. **ōra**, *ear*, **tōd**, *death*, **kōs**, *I chose* = MHG. **ōre**, **tōt**, **kōs**.

= (2) MHG. **œ**, as OHG. **hōhiro**, *higher*, **hōren**, *to hear*, **scōni**, *beautiful* = MHG. **hœher**, **hœren**, **schœne**.

ū = (1) MHG. **ū**, as OHG. **hūs**, *house*, **rūm**, *room*, **dūhta**, *it seemed* = MHG. **hūs**, **rūm**, **dūhte**.

= (2) MHG. **iu**, as OHG. **hūsir**, *houses*, **brūti**, *brides* = MHG. **hiuser**, **briute**.

17

3. The diphthongs:

ei = MHG. **ei**, as OHG. **bein**, *bone*, **leiten**, *to lead*, **sneid**, *I cut* = MHG. **bein**, **leiten**, **sneit**.

ie (older **ia**, **ea** = Germanic **ē**) = MHG. **ie**, as OHG. **hier**, *here*, **mieta**, *reward*, **hielt**, *I held*, **hieꝛ**, *I called*, **slief**, *I slept* = MHG. **hier**, **miete**, **hielt**, **hieꝛ**, **slief**.

io (**eo**) = Germanic **eu** (§ 16), and the **io** (**eo**) in the preterites of the old reduplicated verbs whose presents have **ou**, **ō**, **uo** (§ 87).

= MHG. **ie**, as OHG. **liob**, *dear*, **biotān**, *to offer* = MHG. **liep**, **bieten**; OHG. **liof**, *I ran*, **stioꝛ**, *I pushed*, **riof**, *I called* = MHG. **lief**, **stieꝛ**, **rief**.

iu = MHG. **ū** written **iu**, as OHG. **liuti**, *people*, **kiusit**, *he chooses* = MHG. **liute**, **kiuset**.

ou (older **au**) = (1) MHG. **ou**, as OHG. **ouga**, *eye*, **boug**, *I bent*, **loufan**, *to run* = MHG. **ouge**, **bouc**, **loufen**.

= (2) MHG. **öu** (**eu**), as OHG. **loubir**, *leaves*, **loufil**, *runner* = MHG. **löuber**, **löufel**.

uo = (1) MHG. **uo**, as OHG. **bruoder**, *brother*, **muoter**, *mother*, **stuont**, *I stood* = MHG. **bruoder**, **muoter**, **stuont**.

= (2) MHG. **üe**, as OHG. **gruoni**, *green*, **fuoꝛi**, *feet*, = MHG. **grüene**, **vüeꝛe**.

ABLAUT (VOWEL GRADATION).

§ 12. By ablaut is meant the gradation of vowels both in stem and suffix, which was chiefly caused by the primitive Indo-Germanic system of accentuation. See the Author's Historical German Grammar, § 23.

The vowels vary within certain series of related vowels, called ablaut-series. In MHG. there are six such series, which appear most clearly in the stem-forms of strong verbs. Four stem-forms are to be distinguished in a MHG. strong verb which has vowel gradation as the characteristic mark of its different stems:—(1) the present stem, to which belong all the forms of the present, (2) the stem of the first or third person of the preterite singular, (3) the stem of the preterite plural, to which belong the second person of the preterite singular and the whole of the preterite subjunctive, (4) the stem of the past participle.

By arranging the vowels according to these four stems we arrive at the following system:—

	i.	ii.	iii.	iv.
I.	ī	ei, ē	i	i
II.	ie	ou, ō	u	o
III.	i, ē	a	u	u, o
IV.	ë	a	ā	o
V.	ë	a	ā	ë
VI.	a	uo	uo	a

NOTE.—1. On the difference between **ei** and **ē**, see § 17; **ou** and **ō**, § 18; and in Series III **i** and **ë**, § 14; **u** and **o**, § 15.

2. Strong verbs belonging to Series II have **iu** in the indicative pres. singular; and strong verbs belonging to Series III-V with **ë** in the infinitive have **i** in the indicative pres. singular (§§ 14, 16).

EXAMPLES.

I.	snīden , <i>to cut</i>	snīde	sneit	sniten	gesniten ;
	lihēn , <i>to lend</i>	līhe	lēch	lihen	gelihen .
II.	biegen , <i>to bend</i>	biuge	bouc	bugen	gebogen ;
	sieden , <i>to seethe</i>	siude	sōt	suten	gesoten .
III.	binden , <i>to bind</i>	binde	bant	bunden	gebunden ;
	hēlfen , <i>to help</i>	hilfe	half	hulfen	geholfen .
IV.	nēmen , <i>to take</i>	nime	nam	nāmen	genomen .
V.	gēben , <i>to give</i>	gibe	gap	gāben	gegēben .

19

VI. **graben**, to dig **grabe** **gruop** **gruoben** **gegraben**.

For further examples see the various classes of strong verbs §§ 76-86. Class VII of strong verbs embracing the old reduplicated verbs (§ 87) has been omitted from the ablaut-series, because the exact relation in which the vowel of the present stands to that of the preterite has not yet been satisfactorily explained.

OTHER VOWEL CHANGES.

§ 13. Most of the following vowel changes took place in prehistoric times; but as they play an important part in the verbs and word-formation, &c., we shall give them here.

§ 14. **ë** (= Indo-Germanic **e**) became **i** in the prehistoric period of all the Germanic languages:—

1. Before a nasal + consonant, as OE. **wind**, OHG. MHG. **wint**, Lat. **ventus**, *wind*; OHG. **fimf**, **finf**, Gr. **πέντε**, *five*. This explains why verbs like MHG. **binden**, to bind, **rinnen**, to run, **singen**, to sing, belong to the same ablaut-series as **helfen**, to help, **wërden**, to become.

2. Before other consonants when followed by an **i** or **j** in the next syllable, and further in OHG. when followed by an **u** in the next syllable, as OHG. MHG. **ist**, Gr. **ἴστί**, *is*; OHG. **fih**, Lat. **pecu**, *cattle*; **ërde** (OHG. **ërda**), *earth*, but **irdin**, *earthen*; **ligen** (OHG. **liggen** from ***ligjan**), to lie down, **sitzen** (OHG. **sitzen** from ***sitjan**), to sit, but p.p. **gelëgen** (OHG. **gilëgan**), **gesëzzen** (OHG. **gisëzzan**). This explains why strong verbs belonging to the fourth (§§ 12, 82) and fifth (§§ 12, 83) ablaut-series have **i** throughout the present singular, and similarly in verbs belonging to the third (§§ 12, 81) series with **ë** in the infinitive, as

OHG. nëman , to take, three persons sing.	nimu , nimis(t) , nimit .	20
MHG. nëmen , „ „ „ „	nime , nimes(t) , nimet .	
OHG. gëban , to give, „ „ „	gibu , gibis(t) , gibit .	
MHG. gëben , „ „ „ „	gibe , gibes(t) , gibet .	
OHG. hëlfan , to help, „ „ „	hilfu , hilfis(t) , hilfit .	
MHG. hëlfen , „ „ „ „	hilfe , hilfes(t) , hilfet .	

§ 15. **u**, followed originally by an **ã**, **õ**, or **ë** in the next syllable, became **o** when not protected by a nasal + consonant or an intervening **i** or **j**; hence the interchange between **u** and **o** in the preterite plural and past participle of verbs belonging to the second ablaut-series (§§ 12, 78), as **bugen** (OHG. **bugum**), *we bent*, p.p. **gebogen** (OHG. **gibogan**); in the p.p. of verbs belonging to the third ablaut-series (§§ 12, 81), as **gebunden** (OHG. **gibuntan**), but **geholfen** (OHG. **giholfan**); in weak verbs as **fürhten** (OHG. **furhten** from ***furhtjan**), to fear, beside pret. **vorhte** (OHG. **forhta**); **hügen** (OHG. **huggen** from ***hugjan**) beside **hogen** (OHG. **hogën**), to think; in preterite presents like **durfen** (OHG. **durfum**), *we dare*, beside pret. **dorfte** (OHG. **dorfta**); in many nouns and adjectives, as **wolle** (OHG. **wolla**), *wool*, beside **wüllin**, **wullin**, *woollen*; **wolf** (stem ***wulfo-**), *wolf*, beside **wülpinne**, *she-wolf*; **vol**, *full*, beside **vülle** (OHG. **fulli**), *fulness*; **golt**, *gold*, beside **guldin**, *golden*.

§ 16. From primitive Germanic **eu** were developed two different diphthongs in OHG., viz. **eu** became **eo** (cp. § 15), later **io**, when originally followed by an **ã**, **õ**, or **ë** in the next syllable, and this **io** was regularly developed to **ie** in MHG.; whereas **eu** became **iu** in OHG. when originally followed by an **i**, **j** or **u** in the next syllable, and this **iu** became **ü** (written **iu**) in MHG., even after the **i**, **j** or **u** had been weakened to **e**. This law explains the difference between the diphthong **ie** in the infinitive and the simple vowel **iu** (= **ü**) in the three persons singular of the present indicative of verbs belonging to the second ablaut-series (§§ 12, 78), as

OHG. biogan , to bend, pres. sing.	biugu , biugis(t) , biugit ;	21
MHG. biegen , „ „ „	biuge , biuges(t) , biuget .	

Cp. further **tief** (OHG. **tiof**), *deep*, beside OHG. **tiuf**, *depth*; **lieht** (OHG. **lioht**), *a light*, beside **liuhten** (OHG. **liuhten** from ***liuhtjan**), to light.

NOTE.— The **iu** in the above and similar examples must not be confounded with the **iu** in the OHG. and MHG. combination **iuw** which arose from prim. Germanic **eww** (= **euw**), and **ewj**, as **triuwe** (OHG. **triuwi**, Goth. **triggws**), *true*; **triuwen**, **trüwen**, to trust, pret. **triuete**, **triuete**, **trüte**; **riuwe** (OHG. **riuwa**), *regret*, **bliuwen** (OHG. **bliuwan**, Goth. **bliggwan**), to strike, and similarly, **briuwen**, to brew, **kiuwen**, to chew, **riuwen**, to regret; **niuwe** (OHG. **niuwi**, Goth. **niujs**, prim. Germanic stem-form ***newja-**), *new*. This **iu** before **w** never interchanged with MHG. **ie** from prim. Germanic **eu**, and explains why the strong verbs **bliuwen**, &c. have **iu** in all forms of the present.

§ 17. Accented primitive Germanic **ai** (= Goth. **ái**) became **ë** in OHG. before **r**, **w**, Germanic **h** (cp. § 23, 1), and finally; in MHG. it appears also as **ë** before the same consonants and finally, as **mëre**, **mër** (OHG. **mëro**, Goth. **máiza**), *more*, **lëren** (OHG. **lëren**, Goth. **láisjan**), to teach; **sële** (OHG. **sëla**, older **sëula**, Goth. **sáiwala**), *soul*; **snë** (OHG. **snëo**, Goth. **snáiw**), *snow*, gen. OHG. and MHG. **snëwes**; **spïwen**, to spit, pret. **spë** (OHG. **spëo**, Goth. **spáiw**); **dïhen**, to thrive, pret. **dëch** (OHG. **dëh**, Goth. **dáih**); **wë** (OHG. **wë**, Goth. **wái**), *woe!*; in all other cases **ai** became **ei** in both OHG. and MHG., as **stein** (Goth. **stáins**), *stone*, **heizen** (OHG. **heizan**, Goth. **háitan**), to call; **sniden**, to cut, pret. **sneit** (OHG. **sneid**, Goth. **snáip**). This accounts for the difference between the **ei** and **ë** in the preterite singular of strong verbs belonging to the first ablaut-series (§§ 12, 76).

§ 18. Primitive Germanic **au** became **ō** in OHG. before the consonants **d, t, z, s, n, r, l**, and Germanic **h** (cp. 23, 1). Before other consonants and finally **au** became **ou** in the ninth century. Hence the difference between **ō** and **ou** in the preterite singular of strong verbs belonging to the second ablaut-series (§§ 12, 78), as:—

Infinitive	bieten , <i>to offer</i> ,	pret. sing.	bōt
„	sieden , <i>to seethe</i> ,	„ „	sōt
„	kiesen , <i>to choose</i> ,	„ „	kōs
„	diezen , <i>to roar</i> ,	„ „	dōz
„	vliehen , <i>to flee</i> ,	„ „	vlōch (OHG. flōh);
but „	biegen , <i>to bend</i> ,	„ „	bouc
„	klieben , <i>to cleave</i>	„ „	kloup .

CHAPTER II

THE CONSONANTS

1. PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 19. The MHG. consonant-system was represented by the following letters: **b, c, ch, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, sch, t, v, w, (x), z, z̥**.

The letters **k, l, m, n, p, t, w, (x)** had nearly the same sound-values as in English. The remaining letters require special attention.

When the pronunciation of consonants merely differs in the intensity or force with which they are produced, they are called fortes or lenes according as they are produced with more or less intensity or force. In MHG. the consonants **b, d, g** were not voiced explosives like English **b, d, g**, but were voiceless lenes, and only differed from the fortes **p, t, k** in being produced with less intensity or force, see § 33. A similar difference in pronunciation existed between antevocalic and intervocalic **v, s** and final **f, s**, see § 33.

c and **k** represented the same sound. The latter was generally used at the beginning, and the former at the end of a syllable, as **kunst**, *art*; **trinken**, *to drink*, **senken**, *to sink* (trans.), pret. **tranc**, **sancte**.

ch had the same sound as in NHG. **nacht**, **noch**, as **sprechen**, *to speak*, pret. **sprach**; **hōch**, *high*.

f had a twofold pronunciation in the oldest HG. It was a labiodental when it arose from Germanic **f** (cp. OHG. **fater**, English **father**), and bilabial when it arose from Germanic **p** (cp. inf. OHG. **slāfan**, English **sleep**), but during the OHG. period the bilabial **f** became labiodental. The two kinds of **f** did not however completely fall together in pronunciation. **f** = Germanic **f** became a lenis initially before and medially between vowels, and was often written **v** in the former and generally **v** in the latter position, but remained a fortis—written **f**—when final. In MHG. it was also often written **f** initially before **l, r, u**, as **fliehen**, *to flee*, **fride**, *peace*, **fünf**, *five*, beside **vliehen**, **vride**, **vünf**. On the other hand **f** = Germanic **p** (§ 23, 1), which only occurred medially and finally, was a fortis and was always written **f** (**ff**), as **slāfen**, *to sleep*, pret. **slief**; **tief**, *deep*, **schif** (gen. **schiffes**), *ship*, **offen**, *open*. The two **f** sounds thus fell together when final, but the distinction between the two sounds was still preserved in MHG. in the intervocalic position, as **hof**, *court*, **schif**, *ship*, but gen. **hoves**, **schiffes**.

h before and after consonants was pronounced like **ch**, as **fuhs**, *fox*, **naht**, *night*, **bevēlhen**, *to confide*. In other cases it had the same sound as the **h** in English **hat**.

j had nearly the same sound as the **y** in English **yet**, as **jār**, *year*, **junc**, *young*; **blüejēn**, *to blossom*.

q occurred only in combination with **u** as in English, as **quēc**, *quick*, *alive*, **quēden**, *to say*.

r was a trilled sound in all positions like Scotch **r**, as **rōt**, *red*, **hart**, *hard*, **bērn**, *to bear*, **vater**, *father*.

s was a lenis medially between vowels and probably also initially before vowels, but a fortis in other positions, as **sun**, *son*, **wēsen**, *to be*, pret. **was**, **bresten**, *to burst*. It may be pronounced like the **s** in English **sit**.

sch was like the **sh** in English **ship**, as **schif**, *ship*, **geschēhen**, *to happen*, **visch**, *fish*.

v was a voiceless lenis, and may be pronounced like the **v** in NHG. **voll**. See **f**.

w was pronounced like the **w** in English **wet**, as **wīn**, *wine*, **bliuwen**, *to strike*.

z and **z̥** were not distinguished in MHG. manuscripts, both being written **z**. Both **z** and **z̥** (but **zz** medially between vowels when the first vowel was short) arose from Germanic **t** (see § 23). **z** had the sound-value of **ts** (= NHG. **z**): (a) always initially, as **zīt**, *time*; (b) medially and finally after consonants (**l, m, n, r**), as **holz** (gen. **holzes**), *wood*, **hērze**, *heart*, **smērze**, *pain*, **ganz**, *whole*; (c) finally after vowels (= Germanic **tt**) in those words which change final **z** to **tz** when it becomes medial, as **schaz** (gen. **schatzes**), OE. **sceatt**, *money, treasure*. MHG. intervocalic **tz** always arose from older **tt**, as **setzen** = OE. **settan**, *to set*. **z̥** was a kind of lisped **s** and only occurred

medially between and finally after vowels, as **bīzen**, *to bite*, **ēzzen**, *to eat*, **haz**, *hatred*. It should be noted that good MHG. poets never rhymed pairs of words like **was**, *was*, and **waz**, *what*; **missen**, *to miss*, and **wizzen**, *to know*.

ph and **pf** represent the same sound, viz. the **pf** in NHG. **pfund**, *pound*.

25

§ 20. MHG. has the following double consonants medially between vowels: **bb**, **gg**; **pp**, **tt**, **ck**; **ff**, **ss**, **zz**; **mm**, **nn**; **ll**, **rr**. They were always pronounced long as in Italian and Swedish, as **bit-ter**, *bitter*, **ēz-zen**, *to eat*, **kūs-sen**, *to kiss*, **müg-ge**, *midge*, **rin-nen**, *to run*. In NHG. double consonants are never long, they merely indicate that the preceding vowel is short.

§ 21. Phonetic Survey of the MHG. Consonants.

	LABIAL.	DENTAL.	GUTTURAL.
Voiceless explosives	{ fortis p , pp lenis b , bb	t , tt d	k , ck g , gg
Spirants	{ fortis f , ff lenis v	{ s , ss , sch , z , zz s	h , (ch)
Nasals	m , mm	n , nn	n (= ŋ)
Liquids		l , ll ; r , rr	
Semi-vowels	w , j (palatal)		

To the above must be added the aspirate **h** and the affricatae (i.e. an explosive + a homorganic spirant) **z** (i.e. **ts**) and **pf** (**ph**).

2. CONSONANT CHANGES.

§ 22. The most characteristic difference between High German and the other West Germanic languages is the shifting which the consonants **p**, **t**, **k**, **þ**; **pp**, **tt**, **kk**, **þþ**; **b** (**þ**), **d**, **g** (**ʒ**); **bb**, **dd**, **gg** underwent partly in the prehistoric and partly in the historic period of Old High German. In the following treatment of what is generally called the High German sound-shifting only such points are considered as are of importance for the purposes of this book. See Old High German Primer, §§ 82-6.

26

§ 23. The voiceless explosives **p**, **t**, **k** underwent a two-fold treatment according to their position in the word: (1) Medially or finally after vowels; (2) Initially, medially and finally after consonants (**l**, **m**, **n**, **r**), and when doubled.

NOTE.— **p**, **t**, **k** remained unshifted in the combinations **sp**, **st**, **sk** as also **t** in the combinations **tr**, **ht**, **ft**.

1. Single **p**, **t**, **k** were shifted to the voiceless double spirants **ff**, **zz**, **hh** (also written **ch**) = MHG. **ff** (**f**), **zz** (**z**), **ch**.

p > **ff**. OE. **open**, OHG. **offan**, MHG. **offen**, *open*; OE. **slæpan**, OHG. **slāffan**, MHG. **slāfen**, *to sleep*; OE. **ūp**, OHG. MHG. **ūf**, *up*.

t > **zz**. OE. **etan**, OHG. **ēzzan**, MHG. **ēzzen**, *to eat*; OE. **hātan**, OHG. **heizzan**, MHG. **heizen**, *to call*; OE. **hwæt**, OHG. **hwaz**, MHG. **waz**, *what*. In a few cases the **z**, **zz** became **s** in MHG. before **t** or **st**, as pret. **saste** from **sazte**: **setzen**, *to set*; **beste**, *best*, **leste**, *last* = OHG. **bezzisto**, **lezzisto**.

k > **hh**. OE. **ic**, OHG. **ih**, MHG. **ich**, *I*; OE. **sprecan** (**specan**), OHG. **sprēhhan**, MHG. **sprēchen**, *to speak*; OE. **tācen**, OHG. **zeihhan**, MHG. **zeichen**, *token*. This **ch** must not be confused with the MHG. **h**, **ch** which corresponded to Indo-Germanic **k** (= Germanic **h**), as **ziehen**, *to draw*, **lead**, pret. **zōch**, cp. Lat. **dūcō**, *I lead*, see § 34.

The double consonants were simplified in OHG. and MHG. according to § 32.

2. **p**, **t** initially, medially and finally after consonants (**l**, **m**, **n**, **r**), and when doubled, were shifted to the affricatae **pf** (also written **ph**), **tz** (generally written **zz** and **z**) = MHG. **pf** (**ph**), **tz** (**z**).

p > **pf**. OE. **pund**, OHG. MHG. **pfunt**, *pound*; OE. **gelimpan**, OHG. **gilimpfan**, MHG. **gelimpfen**, *to be meet*; OE. **sciëppan**, OHG. **skepfen**, MHG. **schepfen**, *to create*. The **pf** became **f** after **l** and **r** already in OHG., as **helfan**, MHG. **helfen**, OE. **helpan**, *to help*; **wërfan**, MHG. **wërfen**, OE. **weorpan**, *to throw*.

27

t > **z**. OE. **tunge**, OHG. **zunga**, MHG. **zunge**, *tongue*; OE. **heorte**, OHG. **hërza**, MHG. **hërze**, *heart*; OE. **sealt**, OHG. MHG. **salz**, *salt*; OE. **sittan**, OHG. **sizzen**, **sitzen**, MHG. **sitzen**, *to sit*; OE. **sceatt**, OHG. **scaz** (gen. **scazzes**, **scatzes**), MHG. **schaz** (gen. **schatzes**), *money, treasure*.

k, **kk** (written **ck**) remained unshifted (except in High Alemanic), as OE. **corn**, OHG. MHG. **korn**, *corn*; OE. **cnëo**, OHG. **kneo**, MHG. **knie**, *knee*; OE. **sincan**, OHG. **sinkan**, MHG. **sinken**, *to sink*, pret. **sanc**; OE. **þeccan**, OHG. MHG. **decken**, *to cover*.

§ 24. **þ** became **d**, and **þþ** became **tt**, as OE. **þorn**, OHG. MHG. **dorn**, *thorn*; OE. **brōþor**, OHG. MHG. **bruoder**, *brother*. OE. **smiþþe**, OHG. **smitta**, MHG. **smitte**, *smithy*; OE. **moþþe**, late MHG. **motte**, *moth*.

§ 25. The voiced explosives **b**, **d**, **g**, and the voiced spirants **þ**, **ʒ** did not undergo the same universal shifting as the voiceless explosives. **þ**, **ʒ** became **b**, **g**. **b**, **g** remained, and **d** became **t**,

as OE. **brōþor**, OHG. MHG. **bruder**, *brother*; OE. **bēodan**, OHG. **biotan**, MHG. **bieten**, *to offer*; Goth. **giban** (= **gīban**), OHG. **gēban**, MHG. **gēben**, *to give*. OE. **dohtor**, OHG. MHG. **tohter**, *daughter*; OE. **bēodan**, OHG. **biotan**, MHG. **bieten**, *to offer*; OE. **dēad**, OHG. MHG. **tōt**, *dead*. OE. **gōd**, OHG. MHG. **guot**, *good*; OE. **flēogan**, OHG. **fliogan**, MHG. **fliegen**, *to fly*.

§ 26. The double consonants **bb**, **dd**, **gg** = OHG. **pp** (**bb**), **tt**, **cc** (**gg**), and MHG. **pp** (**bb**), **tt**, **ck** (**gg**), as OE. **sibb**, OHG. **sippa** (**sibba**), MHG. **sippe** (**sibbe**), *relationship*; OE. **cribb**, OHG. **krippa** (**kribba**), MHG. **krippe** (**kribbe**), *crib*. OE. **biddan**, OHG. **bitten**, MHG. **bitten**, later **biten**, *to request*; OE. **bridda**, OHG. **dritto**, MHG. **dritte**, later **drite**, *third*. OE. **brycg**, OHG. **bruca** (**brugga**), MHG. **brücke** (**brügge**), *bridge*. The fluctuation in the writing of **pp** and **bb**, **ck** and **gg** is merely orthographical, and does not represent a difference in pronunciation. Both pairs were used to express the lenes medially between vowels. For other examples see § 31.

28

§ 27. The summary of the consonantal changes in §§ 23-6 may be expressed as follows:—

WEST GERMANIC.	MHG.
p; t; k; þ	= ff (f), pf; zz (z), z; ch; d.
pp; tt; kk; þþ	= pf; tz (z); ck; tt.
b (b); d; g (g)	= b; t; g.
bb; dd; gg	= pp (bb); tt; ck (gg).

§ 28. The following sound-changes took place in primitive Germanic:—Every labial + **t** became **ft**; every guttural + **t** became **ht**; every dental + **t** became **ss**, which was simplified to **s** after long vowels. This explains the frequent interchange in MHG. between **pf**, **b** and **f**; between **k**, **g** and **h**; and between **zz**, **z** and **ss**, **s** in forms which are etymologically related.

pf, b—f. schepfen, *to create: geschafft, creature; gēben*, *to give: gift, gift; wēben*, *to weave: English weft.*

k, g—h. wūrken, *to work: pret. worhte; denken*, *to think: pret. dāhte; mugen (mügen)*, *to be able: pret. mohte; bringen*, *to bring: pret. brāhte.*

zz, z—ss, s. giezen, *to pour: gūsse, inundation; wizzen*, *to know: pret. wisse (wiste): wīs, wise; muoz, must: pret. muose (muoste); ēzzen*, *to eat: ās, carrion. Preterites like wiste, muoste were formed after the analogy of preterites like worhte, dāhte, where the t was regular.*

§ 29. The guttural nasal **ŋ** (written **n**) only occurred in the combinations **nk** (**nc**) and **ng**. It disappeared before **h** (= prim. Germanic **χ**) in primitive Germanic with lengthening of a preceding short vowel, as **vāhen** from prim. Germanic ***fanχanan**, *to seize, catch*, beside p.p. **gevangen**; and similarly **hāhen**, *to hang*, p.p. **gehangen**; pret. **brāhte, dāhte, dūhte**, beside **bringen**, *to bring, denken*, *to think, dunken*, *to seem.*

29

The guttural nasal disappeared in an unstressed syllable when preceded by an **n** in a stressed syllable in the course of the OHG. and MHG. period, as OHG. **honag**, MHG. **honec**, beside OHG. **honang**, *honey*; OHG. **kunig**, MHG. **kūnec**, beside OHG. **kuning**, *king*; OHG. **pfennig**, MHG. **pfennic**, beside OHG. **pfenning**, MHG. **pfenninc**, *penny*. And similarly with dental **n**, as **senede** beside **senende**, *longing, yearning.*

§ 30. Strong verbs, which have a medial **v** (**f**), **d**, **h**, **s** in the present, have respectively **b**, **t**, **g** (**ng**), **r** in the second person sing. pret. indicative, the preterite plural indicative, the pret. subjunctive and the past participle. This interchange of consonants is called Verner's Law, see OHG. Primer, §§ 72, 87:—

	INF.	PRET. PL.	P.P.
v(f)—b.	heven , <i>to raise</i>	huoben	gehaben.
d—t.	mīden , <i>to avoid</i>	miten	gemiten.
	snīden , <i>to cut</i>	sniten	gesniten.
h—g.	dīhen , <i>to thrive</i>	digen	gedigen.
	ziehen , <i>to draw</i>	zugen	gezogen.
	slāhen , <i>to strike</i>	sluogen	geslagen.
h—ng (§ 29).	hāhen , <i>to hang</i>	hiengen	gehangen.
	vāhen , <i>to catch</i>	viengen	gevangen.
s—r.	rīsen , <i>to fall</i>	rirn	gerirn.
	kiesen , <i>to choose</i>	kurn	gekorn.

This law has, however, many exceptions in MHG. owing to levelling having taken place with the infinitive, present indicative and preterite singular, as **risen, gerisen** beside **rirn, gerirn.**

30

The same interchange of consonants exists between strong verbs and their corresponding causative weak verbs, as **līden**, *to go: leiten*, *to lead; hāhen*, *to hang: hengen*, *to hang (trans.); ge-nēsen*, *to be saved: nern*, *to save; and in nouns, &c., as hof* (gen. **hoves**), *court: hūbesch*, *courtly; tōt* (gen. **tōdes**), *death: tōt* (gen. **tōtes**), *dead; swēher*, *father-in-law: swiger*, *mother-in-law; hase: English hare.*

§ 31. The doubling of consonants took place under certain well-defined rules partly in prim.

Germanic and partly in prim. West Germanic, see the Author's Hist. Germ. Grammar, §§ 202, 213-14. Examples of words which had double consonants in prim. Germanic are: **kopf**, head; **napf** (OE. **hnæp**, gen. **hnæppes**), *basin*; **boc** (OE. **bucca**), *buck*, gen. **bockes**; **rinnen**, *to run*; **swimmen**, *to swim*; **vol** (gen. **volles**), *full*; **vërre**, *far*; **gewisser**, *certain*.

The chief cases in which double consonants arose in prim. West Germanic were:—

1. The assimilation of **bn**, **zn**, **pn** to **bb**, **gg**, **pp** = MHG. **pp**, **ck** (**gg**), **pf**, as **knappe**: **knabe**, *boy*; **rappe**: **rabe**, *raven*; **rocke**: **rogge**, *rye*; **tropfe**, *drop*; **triefen**, *to drip*.

2. **p**, **t**, **k** were doubled before a following **r** or **l**. The doubling regularly took place in the inflected forms, and was then extended to the uninflected forms by levelling, as **apfel** (OE. **æppel**), *apple*; **kupfer** (Lat. **cuprum**), *copper*; **bitter** (Goth. **báitrs**), *bitter*, see § 23 note; **lützel** (OS. **lutil**), *little*; **acker** (Goth. **akrs**), *field*; **wacker** (OE. **wæccer**), *watchful*. See § 23, 2.

3. All single consonants, except **r**, were doubled after a short vowel when there was originally a **j** in the next syllable. The **bb**, **dd**, **gg**; **pp**, **tt**, **kk**, which thus arose, became **pp** (**bb**), **tt**, **ck** (**gg**); **pf**, **tz**, **ck** in MHG. (§§ 23, 2, 26), as **sippe** (**sibbe**), Goth. **sibja**, *relationship*; **bitten**, later **biten**, Goth. **bidjan**, *to request*; **tretten** (*wv.*): **trëten** (*sv.*), *to tread*; **brücke** (**brügge**), *bridge*; **ecke** (**egge**), *edge*; **mücke** (**mügge**), *midge*; **rücke** (**rügge**), *ridge, back*. **schepfen**, Goth. **skapjan**, *to create*; **hitze**, *heat*: **heiz**, *hot*; **netzen**, *to wet*: **naz**, *wet*; **setzen**, Goth. **satjan**, *to set*; **sitzen**, *to sit*: pret. **saz**, p.p. **gesëzzzen**; **decken**, *to cover*: **dach**, *cover*; **lücke**, *gap*: **loch**, *hole*. **zellen**, later **zeln**, *to count*: **zal**, *number*. **vremmen**, later **vremen** (OE. **fremman**), *to perform*. **henne**, *hen*: **hane**, *cock*.

31

In MHG. the double consonants in verbs were often simplified through the levelling out of forms which regularly had a single consonant, e.g. regular forms were: **vremmen**, *to perform*, sing. **vremme**, **vremes(t)**, **vremet**, pl. **vremmen**, **vremmet**, **vremment**, pret. **vremete**, p.p. **gevremet**, then the stem-form with single **m** was levelled out into all the forms, and similarly with many other verbs, as **denen**, *to stretch*; **seln**, *to hand over*; **weln**, *to choose*; **wenen**, *to accustom*; **legen** beside **lecken** (**leggen**), *to lay*; and the strong verbs **biten**, *to beg*; **ligen** beside **licken** (**liggen**), *to lie down*.

§ 32. Double consonants were simplified:—

1. When they became final, as **boc**, *buck*, **kus**, *kiss*, **man**, *man*, **schif**, *ship*, **stum**, *dumb*, **vël**, *hide*, beside gen. **bockes**, **kusses**, **mannes**, **schiffes**, **stummes**, **vëlles**; pret. **maz**, **ran**, **traf**, beside **mëzzzen**, *to measure*, **rinnen**, *to run*, **trëffen**, *to hit*.

2. Before other consonants, as pret. **dacte** (**dahte**), **nante** (**nande**), **kuste**, beside **decken**, *to cover*, **nennen**, *to name*, **küssen**, *to kiss*.

3. After consonants, as pret. **sante** (**sande**) from ***santte**, **wante** (**wande**) from ***wantte**, beside **senden**, *to send*, **wenden**, *to turn*.

4. After long vowels and diphthongs, as pret. sing. **leite** from ***leitte**, pret. pl. **māzen**, **trāfen**, **vielen**, beside **leiten**, *to lead*, **mëzzzen**, *to measure*, **trëffen**, *to hit*, **vallen**, *to fall*. This simplification of double consonants took place during the OHG. period, as **slāfan**, *to sleep*, **heizān**, *to call*, **loufan**, *to run*, **zeichan**, *token*, beside older OHG. **slāffan**, **heizzān**, **louffan**, **zeihhan**.

32

§ 33. In MHG. the lenes **b**, **d**, **g** became the fortes **p**, **t**, **c** (**k**) when they ended a syllable, that is when they came to stand finally, or medially before a voiceless consonant. Traces of this law existed already in OHG. The interchange between the lenes and fortes includes two independent processes, viz. the change of the medial lenes **b**, **d**, **g** to the final fortes **p**, **t**, **k**, and the change of the final **f**, **s** to the medial intervocalic lenes **v** and to what is written **s** (cp. also NHG. **lesen**, **las**). It must be noted that in MHG. the interchanging pairs of consonants were all voiceless and that the difference merely consisted in the intensity or force with which the sounds were produced. This is quite different from NHG. where the interchange is between voiced and voiceless sounds except in the case of **f** which is voiceless in all positions in native words. Examples are: **gëben**, *to give*, **gelouben**, *to believe*, **wërben**, *to turn*, beside pret. **gap**, **geloupte**, **warp**; gen. **libes**, **lambes**, beside nom. **lip**, *life*, **lamp**, *lamp*. **binden**, *to bind*, **wërden**, *to become*, beside pret. **bant**, **wart**; gen. **kindes**, **tōdes**, beside nom. **kint**, *child*, **tōt**, *death*. **biegen**, *to bend*, **singen**, *to sing*, **zeigen**, *to show*, beside pret. **bouc**, **sanc**, **zeicte**; gen. **tages**, **bërges**, beside nom. **tac**, *day*, **bërc**, *mountain*. **nëve**, *nephew*, beside **niftel**, *niece*; gen. **hoves**, **brievés**, beside nom. **hof**, *court*, **brief**, *letter*. **kiesen**, *to choose*, **lësen**, *to gather*, **loesen**, *to loose*, beside pret. **kōs**, **las**, **lōste**; pl. **hiuser**, beside sing. **hūs**, *house*.

§ 34. Final **ch** after vowels interchanged with medial **h**, as **schuoch**, *shoe*, gen. **schuohes**; **hōch**, *high*, gen. **hōhes**; **nāch**, *near*, adv. **nāhe**; pret. **geschach**, **sach**, beside **geschëhen**, *to happen*, **sëhen**, *to see*.

The medial combinations **lh**, **rh** were written **lch**, **rch** when they came to stand finally, as **bevëlhen**, *to confide*, pret. **bevalch**; gen. **schëlhes**, **twërhes**, beside nom. **schëlch**, **twërch**, *askew*, see § 19. **h** (= **ch**) and **ch** often disappeared in unstressed syllables and particles, as **ët**, *only*, **hinte**, **hînt**, *to-night*, **niet**, *not*, **dur**, *through*, beside **ëht**, **hinaht**, **niht**, **nieht**, **durch**.

33

§ 35. Initial **j** became or was written **g** before a following **i**, as **gihet**, *he assures*, beside inf. **jëhen**, pret. **jach**, and similarly **jësen**, *to ferment*, **jëten**, *to weed*. In the verba pura forms with and without the intervocalic glide **j** existed side by side in OHG. and MHG., as **blüejēn** (OHG. **bluojen**) beside **blüēn** (OHG. **bluoēn**), *to bloom*; and similarly **dræjen**, *to twist*, **müejēn**, *to*

trouble, **sæjen**, to sow, beside **dræn**, **müen**, **sæn**. In a few words forms with and without intervocalic **j** (**g**) existed side by side, as gen. **bligēs** beside nom. **blī**, *lead*; **eijer**, **eiger** beside **eier**, *eggs*; **frījen**, **frīgen** beside **frīen**, to free; **meige**, **meie**, *May*; **nerigen**, **nerjen** beside **nern**, to save, rescue; **swerigen**, **swerjen** beside **swern**, to swear; gen. **zwīges**, **zwīes**, nom. **zwī**, *twig*; gen. **zweiger**, **zweier**, of two.

§ 36. In OHG. **w** became vocalized to **o** when it came to stand at the end of a word or syllable, and then generally disappeared after long vowels, but the medial **w** regularly remained in OHG. and MHG. when it was at the beginning of a syllable, as **blā** (OHG. **blāo**, **blā**), *blue*, gen. **blāwes**; **snē** (OHG. **snēo**, **snē**), *snow*, gen. **snēwes**; **strō** (OHG. **strao**, **strō** by contraction), *straw*, gen. **strōwes**; **knīe** (OHG. **kneo**), *knee*, gen. **knīewes**, OHG. **knēwes**; **schate** (OHG. **scato**), *shadow*, gen. **schat(e)wes**; pret. **blou**, **hiu**, **kou**, beside **bliuwen**, to strike, **houwen**, to hew, **kiuwen**, to chew; **fal** (OHG. **falo**), *fallow*, gen. **falwes**; **gar** (OHG. **garo**), *ready*, gen. **garwes**; **mēl** (OHG. **mēlo**), *meal*, gen. **mēlwes**; **smēr** (OHG. **smēro**), *fat*; pret. **smirte**, **strōute**, beside **smirwen**, to smear, **strōuwen**, to strew. See § 9, r.

34

The **w** element sometimes disappeared in the initial combinations **qua-**, **quā-**, **quē-**, **qui-**, **quī-** partly with and partly without influencing the quality of the following vowel, as pret. sing. **kam**, **kom** beside **quam**, *he came*, pret. pl. **kōmen**, **kāmen** beside **quāmen**; **kāle** beside **quāle**, *torture*; **kēc** beside **quēc**, *alive*; **korder**, **körder** beside **quörder**, *bait*; **komen**, **kōmen**, **kumen** beside **quēmen**, to come; pres. sing. **kume**, **kūm(e)s(t)**, **kum(e)s(t)**, **kūm(e)t**, **kum(e)t** = OHG. **quimu**, **quimis**, **quimit**; **kücken** beside **quicken**, to enliven; **kit** beside **quīt** = **quidet**, *he says*.

§ 37. Medial **-ibe-**, **-ide-**, **-ige-** were sometimes contracted to **ī**; and medial **-age-**, **-ege-** to **ei**, as **gīst**, *thou givest*, **gīt**, *he gives*, beside **gibes(t)**, **gibet**; **quīst**, *thou sayest*, **quīt**, *he says*, beside **quides(t)**, **quidet**; **līst**, *thou liest down*, **līt**, *he lies down*, beside **liges(t)**, **liget**. **meit** beside **maget**, *maid*; **seist**, *thou sayest*, **seit**, *he says*, beside **sages(t)**, **saget**; **leist**, *thou layest*, **leit**, *he lays*, beside **leges(t)**, **leget**; **eislich** beside **egeslich**, *terrible*; **gein** beside **gegen**, *against*.

§ 38. Intervocalic **h** often disappeared when the first vowel was long, and then the two vowels underwent contraction, as **hān**, to hang, **vān**, to catch, **vlēn**, to implore, **hō** (adv.), *high*, beside **hāhen**, **vāhen**, **vlēhen**, **hōhe**. Other contracted forms will be found in the Glossary.

§ 39. The final **r** disappeared after long vowels in monosyllables when the next word began with a consonant, but was often restored analogically, as **dā** (OHG. **dār**), *there*: **dārinne**, *therein*; **wā** (OHG. **wār**), *where*: **wārinne**, *wherein*; **hie** (OHG. **hiar**): **hierunder**, *hereunder*; adv. **mē** (OHG. **mēr**), *more*; **ē** (OHG. **ēr**), *formerly*; **sā** (OHG. **sār**), *at once*.

§ 40. Medial **t** (§ 25) became **d** after nasals in late OHG. and early MHG., as **senden**, to send, gen. **blindes** (nom. **blint**, *blind*), pret. **nande**, *he named*, **rūmde**, *he left*, beside early MHG. **senten**, **blintes**, **nante**, **rūmte**. It also occasionally became **d** after **l**, as **halden** beside **halten**, to hold, **solde** beside **solte**, pret. of **suln**, *shall*.

35

36

ACCIDENCE

CHAPTER III

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

§ 41. MHG. nouns have two numbers: singular and plural; three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter, as in OHG. and NHG., from which the gender of nouns in MHG. does not materially differ; four cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, and dative. Traces of an old locative occur in what is called the uninflected dative singular of **hūs**, *house*, beside **hūse**, and in proper names like **Engellant** beside **Engellande**. The vocative is like the nominative.

In MHG., as in the older periods of the other Germanic languages, nouns are divided into two great classes, according as the stem originally ended in a vowel or a consonant, cp. the similar division of nouns in Latin and Greek. Nouns whose stems originally ended in a vowel belong to the vocalic or so-called strong declension. Those whose stems originally ended in **-n** belong to the so-called weak or **n**-declension. All other consonantal stems are generally put together under the general heading, 'Minor Declensions'. In OHG. nouns whose stems originally ended in a vowel are subdivided into the **a**-declension including pure **a**-stems, **ja**-stems, and **wa**-stems; the **ō**-declension including pure **ō**-stems, **jō**-stems, and **wō**-stems; the **ī**-declension, and the **u**-declension. All the nouns belonging to the **u**-declension went over into other declensions in MHG. (cp. §§ 43, 44, 49). But as all final vowels either disappeared (some of them already in OHG.) or were weakened to **e** in MHG. (see §§ 7, 8), it is no longer practicable to retain the OHG. subdivision fully without entering into the oldest and in many cases into the prehistoric period of the language, which would be quite out of place in a MHG. grammar. The old 'Minor Declensions' had begun to pass over into the vocalic, especially into the **ī**- and **a**-, declensions in the oldest OHG. The remnants of the old inflexions preserved in MHG. will be noted in the following paragraphs. The neuter nouns whose stems originally ended in **-os**, **-es** (cp. § 47) are in this

37

A. THE VOCALIC OR STRONG DECLENSION.

1. Masculine Nouns.

§ 42. **First declension.**—To this declension belong all masculine nouns which form their plural in **-e** only. It includes: (a) the old masculine **a**-stems; (b) the old masculine **wa**-stems which lost their final **-w** after long vowels in OHG., as **sē**, *sea*, gen. **sēwes**, pl. **sēwe**, and similarly **bū**, *dwelling*, **rē** (also neuter), *corpse*, **snē**, *snow*, see § 36; and (c) the old masculine **i**-stems which could not have umlaut in the plural (§ 44).

SING.				
Nom. Acc.	tac , <i>day</i>	kil , <i>quill</i>	engel , <i>angel</i>	
Gen.	tages	kil(e)s	engel(e)s	
Dat.	tage	kil(e)	engel(e)	
PLUR.				
Nom. Acc. Gen.	tage	kil(e)	engel(e)	
Dat.	tagen	kil(e)n	engel(e)n	

On the interchange between fortis and lenis, as in **tac**, *day*, **lop**, *praise*, **sant**, *sand*, **hof**, *court*, gen. **tages**, **lobes**, **sandes**, **hoves**, see § 33.

38

Like **tac** are also declined the old consonantal stems **vīent**, *enemy*, and **vriunt**, *friend*, but pl. **vriunde** beside the old plural **vriunt**.

Like **kil** are declined all monosyllabic masculine nouns having a short stem-vowel and ending in **-l** or **-r** (§ 9, 1).

Like **engel** are declined masculine polysyllabic nouns ending in **-el**, **-em**, **-en**, **-er**, when their stem-syllable is long, as **mantel**, *mantle*, **ātem**, *breath*, **morgen**, *morning*, **acker**, *field*. Those in **-em**, **-en** generally retain the **e** in the dative plural. Polysyllabic nouns with short stem-syllables fluctuate between the retention or loss of the **e**, as gen. sing. **vogeles** or **vogels**, dat. sing. and nom. acc. pl. **vogele** or **vogel**, and similarly **vadem**, *thread*, **rēgen**, *rain*, **sumer**, *summer*, see § 9, 2.

§ 43. **Second declension.**—To this declension belong all masculine nouns whose nom. and acc. singular end in **-e**, which is the only difference between this and the first declension. It includes: (a) the old masculine **ja**-stems; (b) many old **u**-stems with short stem-syllable, as **fride** (OHG. **fridu**), *peace*, **site** (OHG. **situ**), *custom*, and similarly **hüge**, *thought*, **mēte**, *mead*, **sig** beside **sic**, *victory*, **wite**, *wood* (see § 36); (c) the old short **i**-stem **wine**, *friend*; and (d) the old masculine **wa**-stem **schate** (gen. **schat(e)wes** beside **schates**), *shadow*.

		SING.	PLUR.
Nom. Acc.	hirte , <i>shepherd</i>	hirte	hirte
Gen.	hirtes	hirte	hirte
Dat.	hirte	hirten	hirten

§ 44. **Third declension.**—To this declension belong all masculine nouns which form their plural in **-e** and with umlaut of the stem-vowel. It includes: (a) the old masculine **i**-stems; (b) the old masculine **u**-stem **sun** (OHG. **sunu**, **sun**), *son*; and (c) the two old consonant stems **fuoz**, *foot*, **zant** (gen. **zandes**), **zan**, *tooth*.

39

		SING.		PLUR.	
		MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	gast	gast , <i>guest</i>	gaste	gesti	
Gen.	gastes	gastes	gaste	gesteo , -io	
Dat.	gaste	gaste	gesten	gestim	

The singular of nouns of this declension was inflected like the **a**-stems (§ 42) already in OHG. And owing to the weakening of the case-endings of the plural in passing from OHG. to MHG. (§ 7), the only difference in the two declensions is the presence or absence of umlaut in the plural. The old masculine **i**-stems which could not have umlaut in the plural accordingly came to be inflected entirely like the old masculine **a**-stems, as **schritt**, *step*, **snit**, *cut*, **biz**, *bite*, pl. **schrite**, **snite**, **bizze**. A further consequence of the singular being inflected alike in both declensions is that the old **a**-stems began to have umlaut in the plural after the analogy of the **i**-stems, as **gedenke**, *thoughts*, **nāgele**, *nails*, **wāgene**, *wagons*, beside **gedanke**, **nagele**, **wagene**.

Nouns ending in the fortis **p**, **t**, **c**, or **f** (= Germanic **f**) regularly change the fortis to lenis in the inflected forms, as **korp**, *basket*, **walt**, *wood*, **slac**, *blow*, **brief**, *letter*, gen. **korbes**, **waldes**, **stages**, **brievés**.

§ 45. The old consonant stems **vater**, *father*, **bruoder**, *brother*, often remain uninflected in the singular, as gen. **vater**, **bruoder** beside **vaters**, **bruoders** (cp. § 9, 2). In the plural they take umlaut, as **veter**, **brüeder**. The old consonant stem **man**, *man*, is either declined like **tac** (§ 42)

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom. Acc.	man	manne, man
Gen.	mannes, man	manne, man
Dat.	manne, man	mannen, man

The nom. plural **man**, now written **mann**, is still preserved in counting, as **hundert mann**, *a hundred men*.

2. Neuter Nouns.

§ 46. First Declension.—To this declension belong all neuter nouns which have their nominative case singular and plural alike. It includes three different types of nouns: (a) The old neuter **a-**stems like **wort**, *word*, **venster**, *window*. (b) The old neuter **ja-**stems like **künne**, *race, generation*, **bette**, *bed*, **netze**, *net*. The characteristic of this type of noun is that it has umlaut in all forms of the singular and plural when the stem-vowel is capable of it (cp. § 31, 3). And (c) the old neuter **wa-**stems (cp. § 36) like **knie**, *knee*, gen. **kniewes**.

	SING.			
Nom. Acc.	wort	venster	künne	knie
Gen.	wortes	vensters	künnes	kniewes (knies)
Dat.	worte	venster	künne	kniewe (knie)
	PLUR.			
Nom. Acc.	wort	venster	künne	knie
Gen.	worte	venster	künne	kniewe (knie)
Dat.	worten	venstern	künnen	kniewen (knien)

(a) On the interchange between the fortes **p, t, c** and the lenes **b, d, g**, as in **grap**, *grave*, **gält**, *money*, **dinc**, *thing*, gen. **grabes, gëldes, dinges**, see § 33.

41

Like **venster** are declined the neuter polysyllabic nouns ending in **-el, -em, -en, -er**, as **luoder**, *bait*, **wāfen, wāpen**, *weapon*; **schapel**, *garland*, **gadem**, *house*, **wēter**, *weather*. On the endings, see §§ 9, 42.

(b) Like **künne** is also declined the old neuter **u-**stem **vihe** (OHG. **fihu**), *cattle*.

(c) Like **knie** are declined **mël**, *meal*, **rē** (also masc.), *corpse*, **smër**, *fat*, **strō**, *straw*, **tou**, *dew*, **wē**, *woe*, gen. **mëlwes, rēwes, smërwes, strōwes, touwes, wēwes**, see § 36.

§ 47. Second declension.—To this declension belong all neuter nouns which form their plural in **-er** and by umlaut of the stem-vowel when it is capable of it. This class of nouns corresponds to the Latin neuters in **-us**, as **genus**, gen. **generis**, pl. **genera**. The **-er** (OHG. **-ir**) was originally a stem-forming suffix which came to be regarded as a plural ending. In the oldest period of the language only about half-a-dozen nouns belonged to this class, but during the MHG. period nearly twenty neuter **a-**stems passed into this declension, and in NHG. the number has increased to about a hundred.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	lamp	lamb, lamb	lember	lembir
Gen.	lambes	lambes	lember	lembiro
Dat.	lambe	lambe	lemben	lembirum

On the loss of the **e** in the gen. and dat. plural, see § 9, 2.

Other examples are: **ei** (pl. **eiger, eijer, eier**, § 35), *egg*, **huon**, *hen*, **kalp**, *calf*, **rat**, *wheel*, **rint**, *bullock*, **tal**, *dale*.

42

3. Feminine Nouns.

§ 48. First declension.—To this declension belong all feminine nouns having their nominative case singular and plural alike. It includes: (a) the old feminine **ō-**stems, as **gēbe**, *gift*, **sēle**, *soul*, **zal**, *number*; (b) the old feminine **jō-**stems, as **küneginne**, *queen*, **künegin**, *queen*, and similarly **vriundinne**, *friend*, **gütinne**, *goddess*; (c) the old feminine **wō-**stems with and without **w**, as **brāwe**, *brow*, pl. **brā** beside weak pl. **brāwen**; **diuwe**, *servant*; (d) the old feminine abstract nouns in **-ī**, as **vinster** (OHG. **finstrī**), *darkness*, **schoene** (OHG. **scōnī**), *beauty*; and (e) the old consonant stem, **swester**, *sister*.

	SING.		
Nom. Acc.	gēbe	zal	vinster
Gen.	gēbe	zal	vinster
Dat.	gēbe	zal	vinster
	PLUR.		
Nom. Acc.	gēbe	zal	vinster
Gen.	gēben	zaln	vinstern

On the endings in nouns declined like **zal**, *number*, **dol**, *pain*, **wal**, *choice*, **nar**, *food*, **schar**, *flock*, and **vinstern**, see § 9, 1, 2.

The gen. plural had the ending of the weak declension already in the oldest period of the language. Through the nom. singular and the gen. and dat. plural having the same endings as the feminine weak declension (§ 53), **ō**-stems began in OHG. to be inflected after the analogy of the weak declension, especially in the plural. This process spread considerably in MHG. with concrete nouns, but not often with abstract nouns.

§ 49. **Second declension.**—To this declension belong all feminine nouns which form their plural in **-e** and have umlaut in the stem-vowel. It includes: (a) the old feminine **i**-stems; (b) the old **u**-stem **hant**, *hand*; and (c) several old consonantal stems, see below.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	anst	anst , <i>favour</i>	enste	ensti
Gen.	enste or anst	ensti	enste	ensteo , -io
Dat.	enste or anst	ensti	ensten	enstim

In **jugent** (OHG. **jugund**, pl. **jugundi**), *youth*, gen. dat. **jugende** beside **jugent**, pl. **jugende**, the original **-i** being in the third syllable did not cause umlaut in the stem-syllable; and similarly **tugent**, *valour*.

hant, *hand*, originally belonged to the **u**-declension, which explains forms like gen. sing. and plural **hande** beside **hende**, dat. pl. **handen** beside **henden**. The old gen. plural has been preserved in NHG. **allerhand**, and the dat. plural in **abhanden**, **beihanden**, **vorhanden**, **zuhanden**.

Several old consonant stems went over partly or entirely into this declension, viz. **maget**, **meit** (§ 37), *maid*, pl. **mägede** or **meide**; **kuo**, *cow*, pl. **küje** or **küewe** (OHG. **kuoi**), **sū**, *sow*, pl. **siuwe** (OHG. **sūi**); both these nouns generally remained uninflected in the gen. and dat. singular. **naht**, *night*, has gen. and dat. singular **naht** beside **nächte**; pl. nom. acc. gen. **naht** beside **nächte**, dat. **nahten** beside **nächten**, cp. also NHG. **weihnachten**, MHG. **zën wihen nahten**. The MHG. adverbial gen. **nahts**, **dës nahtes** was formed after the analogy of **dës tages**. Like **naht** were also inflected **brust**, *breast*, and **burc**, *citadel*.

muoter, *mother*, and **tohter**, *daughter*, remain uninflected in the singular. In the plural they have umlaut: **müeter**, **töhter**.

B. THE WEAK DECLENSION (N-STEMS).

§ 50. The weak declension contains a large number of masculine and feminine nouns, but only four neuter nouns, viz. **hërze**, *heart*, **øre**, *ear*, **ouge**, *eye*, and **wange**, *cheek*; these nouns, especially **hërze**, sometimes form their nom. acc. plural after the analogy of nouns like **künne** (§ 46). The original case endings of the weak declension had disappeared in the oldest period of the language except in the nom. singular (masc. **-o**, fem., and neut. **-a**), the gen. pl. (**ōno**) and dat. pl. (**-ōm**). Owing to the weakening of the **-o**, **-a** to **-e** in MHG. the nom. singular became alike in all genders. And similarly the endings **-ōno**, **-ōm** and the endings of the other oblique forms were all weakened to **-en** in MHG. (§ 7), so that the element which originally formed part of the stem came to be regarded as a case ending.

On the loss of the final and medial **e** in nouns like **ar**, *eagle*, **bir** (fem.), *pear*, **gevangen(e)**, *prisoner*, beside the inflected forms **arn**, **birn**, **gevangen** from ***gevangen-en** through the intermediate stage ***gevangenn**, see § 9, 1, 2.

§ 51.

1. Masculine Nouns.

	SING.	
	MHG.	OHG.
Nom.	bote	boto , <i>messenger</i>
Acc.	boten	boton , -un
Gen.	boten	boten , -in
Dat.	boten	boten , -in
	PLUR.	
Nom. Acc.	boten	boton , -un
Gen.	boten	botōno
Dat.	boten	botōm

§ 52.

2. Neuter Nouns.

	SING.	
	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	hërze	hërza , <i>heart</i>
Gen.	hërzen	hërzen , -in

Dat.	hërzen	hërzen, -in
	PLUR.	
Nom. Acc.	hërzen	hërzun, -on
Gen.	hërzen	hërzōno
Dat.	hërzen	hërzōm

§ 53.

3. Feminine Nouns.

	SING.	
	MHG.	OHG.
Nom.	zunge	zunga, tongue
Acc.	zungen	zungūn
Gen.	zungen	zungūn
Dat.	zungen	zungūn
	PLUR.	
Nom. Acc.	zungen	zungūn
Gen.	zungen	zungōno
Dat.	zunge	zungōm

C. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 54. Names of persons ending in **e** in the nominative follow the weak declension. Masculine names of persons take **-es** in the genitive, **-e** in the dative, and **-en** in the accusative after the analogy of the strong adjectives. The accusative ending **-en** was sometimes extended to the dative, and the dative ending **-e** to the accusative. And sometimes both these cases were without endings. Names of countries ending in **-lant** often have no ending in the dative, as **Engellant** beside **Engellande**, see § 41. Feminine names of persons ending in a consonant take **-e** in the genitive, dative and accusative, but occasionally remain uninflected throughout.

46

MASCULINE.

Nom.	Sifrit	Hagene
Gen.	Sifrides	Hagenen
Dat. Acc.	Sifrit, Sifride(n)	Hagenen

FEMININE.

Nom.	Kriemhilt	Uote
Gen. Dat. Acc.	Kriemhilde, Kriemhilt	Uoten

CHAPTER IV

ADJECTIVES

A. THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The Strong Declension.

§ 55. The MHG. adjectives are declined as strong or weak. They have three genders, and the same cases as nouns. The endings of the strong declension are partly nominal and partly pronominal. The nominal endings are: the accusative feminine singular, as **blinde** like **gēbe** (§ 48); and the genitive singular masculine and neuter, as **blindes** like **tages, wortes** (§§ 43, 46). All the other endings are pronominal. The so-called uninflected form of adjectives in the nom. singular masculine and feminine and the nom. acc. neuter is a remnant of the time when adjectives and nouns were declined alike, see the Author's Hist. Germ. Grammar, §§ 399-400. The strong declension includes three different types of adjectives, all of which are declined alike: (a) The old **a**-stems, as **blint**, infl. form **blinter, blind**; **bar, bare, guot, good, heilec, holy, hol, hollow, michel, great, vinster, dark**, and similarly with a very large number of adjectives, including the past participles of strong and weak verbs. (b) The old **ja**-stems, as **lære** (OHG. **lāri**), infl. **lærer, empty; dünne, thin, enge, narrow, grüene, green, niuwe, new, reine, pure, schöne, beautiful, senfte, soft, wilde, wild**, and many others, including the present participles of strong and weak verbs. The **ja**-stems only differ from the **a**-stems in having **-e** in the uninflected form and umlaut in the stem-syllable when it is capable of it. (c) The old **wa**-stems, as **blā** (OHG. **blāo, blā**), infl. form **blāwer, blue; gar** (OHG. **garo**), infl. form **garwer** (see §§ 9, 1, 36), **ready; grā, grey, val, fallow, gël, yellow, kal, bald, &c.**, all of which have **w** in the inflected forms.

47

The adjectival **i**- and **u**-stems had come to be declined like the **ja**-stems in the prehistoric period of the language, but a few remnants of such adjectives have survived in MHG. in forms without the final **-e** beside those with it, as **bereit, bereite, ready, dic, dicke, thick, gäch, gæhe, quick, grīs, grīse, old, grey, hër, hère, high, noble, rasch, resche, quick, rīch, rīche, noble, swā,**

swære, *heavy*, **was**, **wasse**, *sharp*.

SING.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	blinder , <i>blind</i>	blindez	blindiu
Acc.	blinden	blindez	blinde
Gen.	blindes	blindes	blinder(e)
Dat.	blindem(e)	blindem(e)	blinder(e)
PLUR.			
Nom.	blinde	blindiu	blinde
Acc.	blinde	blindiu	blinde
Gen.	blinder(e)	blinder(e)	blinder(e)
Dat.	blinden	blinden	blinden

48

On the loss of the **-e** in **blindem(e)**, **blinder(e)**, see § 9, 2. Umlaut caused by the **-iu** occurs in the nom. sing. feminine and nom. acc. pl. neuter of **al**, *all*, and **ander**, *other, second*, as **älliu**, **ändriu**. This rarely happens in other words.

SING.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	micheler , <i>great</i>	michel(e)z	micheliu
Acc.	michel(e)n	michel(e)z	michel(e)
Gen.	michel(e)s	michel(e)s	michelre , micheler
Dat.	michelme , michel(e)m	michelme , michel(e)m	michelre , micheler
PLUR.			
Nom.	michel(e)	micheliu	michel(e)
Acc.	michel(e)	micheliu	michel(e)
Gen.	michelre , micheler	michelre , micheler	michelre , micheler
Dat.	michel(e)n	michel(e)n	michel(e)n

Like **michel** are inflected monosyllabic adjectives ending in **-l**, **-r** with a short stem-vowel, and polysyllabic adjectives ending in **-el**, **-en**, **-er**, as **bar**, *bare*, **hol**, *hollow*; **zwīvel**, *doubtful*, **eigen**, *own*, **tougen**, *secret*, **ander**, *other, second*, **bitter**, *bitter*, **vinster**, *dark*; **ēben**, *even*, **übel**, *evil, bad*, &c. See § 9, 1, 2.

49

2. The Weak Declension.

§ 56. The weak declension of adjectives agrees exactly with that of the nouns.

SING.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	blinde , <i>blind</i>	blinde	blinde
Acc.	blinden	blinde	blinden
Gen.	blinden	blinden	blinden
Dat.	blinden	blinden	blinden

Plural **blinden** for all cases and genders.

B. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 57. The comparative was formed by means of the suffix **-er(e)** = OHG. **-iro**, **-ōro**, and the superlative by means of the suffix **-est(e)** = OHG. **-isto**, **-ōsto**. On the loss of the medial or final **e** in such forms as **tiurre**, *dearer*, **tiurste**; **minner**, *less*, **minnest**, **min(ne)ste**, see § 9, 3. Most monosyllables have umlaut in the comparative and superlative either exclusively or have mutated beside unmutated forms. The cause of these double forms is in a great measure due to the two OHG. double suffixes: comp. **-iro**, **-ōro** and superl. **-isto**, **-ōsto** having fallen together in **-er(e)** and **-est(e)** in MHG., as **elter**, *older*, **ermer**, *poorer*, **jünger**, *younger*, **größer**, *greater*, **höher**, *higher*, beside **alter**, **armer**, **junger**, **größer**, **höher**; superl. **eltest**, **ermest**, **jüngest**, **grözest**, **höhest**, beside **altest**, **armest**, **jungest**, **grözest**, **höhest**. Adjectives which have umlaut in the positive regularly preserve it in the comparative and superlative.

The comparative is declined weak, but the superlative is declined strong and weak.

50

§ 58. The following adjectives form their comparative and superlative from a different root than the positive:—

- guot**, *good*, **bezzer**, **bezzest**, **beste** (§ 23).
- übel**, *bad*, **wirser**, **wirsest**, **wir(se)ste**.
- lützel**, *little*, **minner**, **minre** (§ 9, 3), **minnest**, **min(ne)ste**.
- michel**, *great*, **mērer**, **mēr(r)e**, **meiste**.

§ 59. The following adjectives are defective:—

ērer, ērre, ērre, former, ērest, ērste, first.
hinder, hinder, hinderste, hindmost.
ober, upper, oberste, uppermost.
lezzeste, leste (§ 23), last.
vorder, former, vorderste, foremost.

C. FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 60. 1. By adding **-e** (= OHG. **-o**) to the adjective when this does not already end in **-e**, as **ēben**, *even*, **hōch**, *high*, **lanc**, *long*: adv. **ēbene**, **hōhe**, **lange**; **edele** (OHG. **edili**), *noble*, **übel** (OHG. **ubil**), *evil*: adv. **edele** (OHG. **edilo**), **übele** (OHG. **ubilo**).

2. Dissyllabic adjectives ending in **-e** and containing a mutated stem-vowel change it to the corresponding unmutated vowel, when used as adverbs, as **schœne** (OHG. **scōni**), *beautiful*, **herte**, *hard*, **senfte**, *soft*, **süeze**, *sweet*, **swære**, *heavy*: adv. **schône**, **harte**, **sanfte**, **suoze**, **swäre**.

3. By adding **-liche** or **-lichen** to the adjective, as **ganz**, *whole*, **vlīzec**, *diligent*: adv. **ganzliche(n)**, **vlīzeclīche(n)**.

4. The comparative and superlative degrees of adverbs are the same as the corresponding uninflected forms of the adjectives without umlaut:—

Adjective	lanc , <i>long</i>	lenger	lengest .
Adverb	lange	langer	langest
		(OHG. langōr)	(OHG. langōst).

§ 61. The following are irregular:—

wol , <i>well</i>	baz , <i>better</i>	best(e) , <i>best</i> .
	wirs , <i>worse</i>	wirrest , wirste , <i>worst</i> .
	min , minner , minre , <i>less</i>	minnest , minste , <i>least</i> .
	mē , mēr , mēre , <i>more</i>	meist , meiste , <i>most</i> .
	ē , <i>formerly</i>	ēr(e)st , ērste , <i>first</i> .

§ 62.

D. NUMERALS.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	
ein , -er , -ez , -iu , <i>one</i>		ērste
zwei , <i>two</i>		ander
dri , <i>three</i>		dritte
vier , <i>four</i>		vierde
fünf (finf), <i>five</i>		fünfte , finfte
sēhs , <i>six</i>		sēhste
siben , <i>seven</i>		sibende , -te
ahte , <i>eight</i>		ahtede , ahte
niun , <i>nine</i>		niunde , -te
zēhen , <i>ten</i>		zēhende , -te
einlif (eilif), <i>eleven</i>		ei(n)lifte , eilfte
zwelf , <i>twelve</i>		zwelfte
drizēhen , <i>thirteen</i>		drizēhende
vierzēhen , <i>fourteen</i>		vierzēhende
fünzfēhen , <i>fifteen</i>		fünzfēhende
sēh(s)zēhen , <i>sixteen</i>		sē(h)szēhende
sibenzēhen , <i>seventeen</i>		sibenzēhende
ah(t)zēhen , <i>eighteen</i>		ah(t)zēhende
niunzēhen , <i>nineteen</i>		niunzēhende
zweinzic (<i>or -zec</i>), <i>twenty</i>		zweinzigeste
drizic „ <i>thirty</i>		drizigeste
vierzic „ <i>forty</i>		vierzigeste
fünzic „ <i>fifty</i>		fünzigeste
sēhszic „ <i>sixty</i>		sēhszigeste
sibenzic „ <i>seventy</i>		sibenzigeste
ah(t)zic „ <i>eighty</i>		ah(t)zigeste
niunzic „ <i>ninety</i>		niunzigeste
zēhenzic <i>or hundert</i>	} <i>hundred</i>	{ zēhenzigeste <i>or hundertste</i>
zwei hunt <i>or hundert</i>	} <i>two hundred</i>	zweihundertste

tūsent *thousand* **tūsenste**
zwei tūsent *two thousand* **zweitūsentste**

§ 63. **Ein** follows the strong declension, when used as a numeral. The dat. **einne** is generally contracted to **eime** (§ 9, 3). When **ein** is used in the sense of *alone*, it follows the weak declension. On the inflexion of **ander**, *second*, see § 55. **Zwei** and **drī** are declined as follows:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom. Acc.	zwēne	zwei	zwō, zwuo, zwā
Gen.	zwei(g)er (§ 35)	zwei(g)er	zwei(g)er
Dat.	zwein, zweien	zwein, zweien	zwein, zweien
Nom. Acc.	drī, dr[i]e	driu	drī, drīe
Gen.	drī(g)er (§ 35)	drī(g)er	drī(g)er
Dat.	drīn, drīen	drīn, drīen	drīn, drīen

§ 64. The other cardinals up to twelve are sometimes inflected; when such is the case the endings are:—

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. Acc.	-e	-iu
Gen.	-er	-er
Dat.	-en	-en

hundert and **tūsent** are neuter nouns.

CHAPTER V

PRONOUNS

§ 65.

1. PERSONAL.

SING.

Nom.	ich, I	du, dū, thou
Acc.	mich	dich
Gen.	min	din
Dat.	mir	dir

PLUR.

Nom.	wir	ir
Acc.	unsich, uns	iuch
Gen.	unser	iuwer
Dat.	uns	iu

SING.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	ēr, he	ēz, it, there	si, sī, siu, sie, she
Acc.	in	ēz	sie, si, sī
Gen.	(ēs)	ēs	ir(e)
Dat.	im(e)	im(e)	ir(e)

PLUR.

Nom. Acc.	si, sī, sie (Neut. also siu), <i>they</i>
Gen.	ir(e)
Dat.	in

NOTE.—1. The gen. **ir** is often used as a possessive pronoun. For **ēz** the form **iz** sometimes appears.

2. For the acc. pl. **unsich** the dat. **uns** is mostly used. **iu** is often used for **iuch**, and *vice versa*. **im, ir** are more usual than **ime, ire**.

3. The unstressed forms of personal pronouns are often attached to other words, as **ichz, iz** = **ich ēz**; **ichne, ine, ichn** = **ich ne** (*not*); **tuostu** = **tuost du**; **dune, dun** = **du ne** (*not*); **tuoz** = **tuo ēz**; **eist, ēst** = **ēz ist**; **deiz** = **daz ēz**; **mohter** = **mohte ēr**; **baten** = **bat in**; **wirz** = **wir ēz**, &c.

§ 66.

2. REFLEXIVE.

SING. PLUR.

Acc.	sich	sich
Gen.	sīn (fem. ir)	ir
Dat.	im, ir	in

3. POSSESSIVE.

§ 67. *mīn*, *my*; *dīn*, *thy*; *sīn*, *his*; *ir*, *her*; *unser*, *our*; *iuwer*, *your*; *ir*, *their*.

They are declined like the strong adjective **michel**, *great* (§ 55). The dat. sing. forms **dīnme**, **sīnme** are generally contracted to **dīme**, **sīme**, see § 9, 3.

§ 68.

4. DEMONSTRATIVE.

SING.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	dēr , <i>the</i>	daz	dīu
Acc.	dēn	daz	die
Gen.	dēs	dēs	dēr(e)
Dat.	dēm(e)	dēm(e)	dēr(e)
Instr.		dīu	
PLUR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	die	dīu	die
Acc.	die	dīu	die
Gen.	dēr(e)	dēr(e)	dēr(e)
Dat.	dēn	dēn	dēn

Like **dēr** is also declined **jener**, *that*, except that the Nom., Acc. sg. neut. ends in **-ez**. **dēr**, &c., is used both as definite article and relative pronoun.

55

NOTE.—1. For the fem. nom. sing. and the neut. nom. acc. pl. **dīu**, the form **die** was sometimes used; and conversely **dīu** for **die** in the fem. acc. singular. **dīu** and **die** were sometimes weakened to **de**, and to **d'** before words beginning with a vowel. **daz** was sometimes weakened to **dez**, and still further to **z** which was then attached to a preceding word, as **lätz kind** = **lāt dz kint**; **anz**, **inz** = **an**, **in dz**. **dēst**, **deis**, **dēs** = **daz ist**.

2. The various cases were often fused into one word with prepositions, as **anme**, **ame**, **am** = **an dēme**; **zēme**, **zēm** = **ze dēme**; **ūfme** = **ūf dēme**; **zēr** = **ze dēr** (fem.); **ūbern** = **ūber dēn**; **ūfēn** = **ūf dēn**; **zēn** = **ze dēn**.

SING.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	dirre (diser , dise), <i>this</i>	ditze , diz , diz	disiu
Acc.	disen	ditze , diz , diz	dise
Gen.	dises	dises	dirre
Dat.	disem(e)	disem(e)	dirre
PLUR.			
Nom.	dise	disiu	dise
Acc.	dise	disiu	dise
Gen.	dirre	dirre	dirre
Dat.	disen	disen	disen

5. RELATIVE.

§ 69. A relative pronoun proper did not exist in the oldest periods of the Germanic languages, and accordingly the separate languages expressed it in various ways. In MHG. the following pronouns and adverbial particles were used to express it:—

56

1. **dēr**, **daz** (also used as a conjunction), **dīu**, also in combination with the particles **dar der dā**.
 2. **sō**, **alsō** (**alse**, **als**), *as*; **sam** (**alsam**), *as*. 3. **dā(r)**, *where*, **dar**, *thither*, *whither*, **darinne**, *therein*, **dannen**, *wherfrom*, **darumbe**, *therefore*, **dō**, *when*, *as*. 4. Indefinite relatives, as **swēr** (from **sō wēr**), *whoever*, **swelch**, *each who*, **swēder**, *who of two*; **swā**, **swar**, *wherever*, **swannen**, **swanne** (**swenne**), *whenever*, **swie**, *however*, *howsoever*. 5. The conjunction **unde**, *and*.

6. INTERROGATIVE.

§ 70. The MHG. simple interrogative pronoun has no independent form for the feminine, and is declined in the singular only.

	<i>Masc. Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	wēr , <i>who</i>	waz
Acc.	wēn	waz
Gen.	wēs	wēs
Dat.	wēm(e)	wēm(e)
Instr.		wīu

In the same manner are declined the compounds:

swēr (from **sō wēr**), *whoever*, **etewēr**, **eteswēr**, *anyone*, **neizwēr** (= **ne weiz wēr**, *I do not know*)

who), anyone.

wëder, *who of two*, is declined like a strong adjective; **welich (welch)**, *which*, is also declined like a strong adjective, but the nom. singular remains uninflected.

7. INDEFINITE.

§ 71. **ander**, *other*; **dechein, dehein, dekein**, *no, none*; **dewëder**, *neither*; **ein**, *one, some one*: when **ein** is used with the meaning *alone* it follows the weak declension; **etelich, etlich, eteslich, etslich**, *anyone, many a*, pl. = *some*; **etewër, eteswër**, *anyone*; **etewaz**, *anything*; **iegelich, ieslich, iegeslich**, *each*; **ieman, iemen**, *someone, somebody*; **iewëder, ietwëder**, *each*; **iewelich, iewelich**, *each*; **iewiht, iht**, *anything*; **kein**, *no*; **man**, *one*; **manec**, *many a*, declined **maneger, manegez, manegiu**, &c.; **nehein**, *no, none*; **niht**, *nothing*; **solch**, *such*, declined like **manec**; **sum**, *any one at all*, pl. *some*; **sumelich, sumlich**, *many a*; **swelch**, *each who*; **swër**, *whoever*; **wëder**, *which of two*; **welich (welch)**, *which*, declined like **manec**.

57

CHAPTER VI

VERBS

§ 72. The MHG. verb has the following independent forms:—one voice (active), two numbers, three persons, two tenses (present and preterite), two complete moods (indicative and subjunctive, the latter originally the optative), besides an imperative which is only used in the present tense; two verbal nouns (the present infinitive, and the gerund, generally called the inflected infinitive), a present participle with active meaning, and one verbal adjective (the past participle).

The MHG. verbs are divided into two great classes:—Strong and Weak. The strong verbs form their preterite (originally the perfect) and past participle by means of ablaut (§ 12). The weak verbs form their preterite by the addition of the syllable **-te**, and their past participle by means of a **t**-suffix. The strong verbs were originally further sub-divided into reduplicated and non-reduplicated verbs. The reduplication had, however, entirely disappeared in the oldest period of the language. The non-reduplicated verbs are divided into six classes according to the six ablaut-series (§ 12). The originally reduplicated verbs are put together here and called Class VII. Besides these two great classes of strong and weak verbs, there are a few others which will be treated under the general heading *Minor Groups*.

58

A. STRONG VERBS.

§ 73. We are able to conjugate a MHG. strong verb when we know the four stems, as seen in (1) the infinitive or first pers. sing. of the present indicative, (2) the first or third pers. sing. of the preterite indicative, (3) the first pers. plural of the preterite indicative, (4) the past participle. The pret. subjunctive and the second pers. pret. indicative have the same stem-vowel as the pret. plural indicative.

§ 74. The conjugation of **nëmen**, OHG. **nëman**, *to take*, will serve as a model for all strong verbs.

Present.

		INDIC.		SUBJ.	
		MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Sing.	1.	nime	nimu	nëme	nëme
	2.	nimes(t)	nimis(t)	nëmes(t)	nëmës(t)
	3.	nimet	nimit	nëme	nëme
Plur.	1.	nëmen	nëmemës, -ëm	nëmen	nëmëm
	2.	nëmet	nëmet	nëmet	nëmët
	3.	nëment	nëmant	nëmen	nëmën
		IMPER.		INFIN.	
		MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Sing.	2.	nim	nim	nëmen	nëman
Plur.	1.	nëmen	nëmemës, -ëm		
	2.	nëmet, (-ent)	nëmet		
				GERUND.	
		MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Gen.		nëmen(n)es	nëmannes		
Dat.		nëmen(n)e	nëmanne		
				PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	
		nëmende	nëmanti		

Preterite.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

59

	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Sing.	1. nam	nam	næme	nāmi
	2. næme	nāmi	næmes(t)	nāmīst
	3. nam	nam	næme	nāmi
Plur.	1. nāmen	nāmum	næmen	nāmīm
	2. nāmet	nāmut	næmet	nāmīt
	3. nāmen	nāmun	næmen	nāmīn

PAST PARTICIPLE.

MHG.	OHG.
genomen	ginoman

NOTE.— The **e** in the endings is regularly lost according to the rule given in § 9, 1, as sing. **stil**, **stilst**, **stilt**, inf. **stēln**, *to steal*; sing. **var**, **verst**, **vert**, inf. **varn**, *to go*. It was also frequently lost in the third pers. sing. pres. indicative of other verbs, as **vint** = **vindet**, **siht** = **sihet**, see § 9, 4 note. The **n** in the first pers. plural was sometimes dropped when the pronoun came after the verb, as **nēme wir** = **nēmen wir**.

The imperative singular sometimes has **-e** after the analogy of weak verbs (§ 90).

The OHG. forms given above show in what forms umlaut regularly took place, viz. in the second and third pers. singular of the pres. indicative, when possible, in the second pers. singular of the pret. indicative, and in the pret. subjunctive. The second pers. singular of the pret. indicative always has the same stem-vowel as the pret. subjunctive. On the absence of umlaut in the pret. subjunctive of certain types of verbs, see § 10, note. Forms without and with umlaut are found in the second and third pers. singular of the present in verbs belonging to Class VII, as **slāfes(t)**, **slāfet** beside **slæfes(t)**, **slæfet**.

Concerning the changes between **i, ë; u, o; iu, ie; ei, ē; ou, ō** in the various classes of strong verbs, see §§ 14-17.

60

THE CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS.

§ 75. We shall only give in each class a few verbs to illustrate the gradation of vowels and consonant changes. All other verbs occurring in the texts will be found in the Glossary referred to their proper class.

CLASS I.

§ 76. The verbs of this class belong to the first ablaut-series (§ 12) and therefore have **ī** in all forms of the present; **ei** in the first and third pers. sing. of the preterite, but **ē** before **ch** (= Germanic **h**, § 23), and finally (§ 17); and **i** in the preterite plural and past participle, thus:—

bīten , <i>to wait</i>	beit	biten	gebiten
swīgen , <i>to be silent</i>	sweic	swigen	geswigen
trīben , <i>to drive</i>	treip	triben	getriben

And similarly **beliben**, *to remain*, **bīzen**, *to bite*, **riben**, *to rub*, **rīten**, *to ride*, **schīnen**, *to shine*, **schriben**, *to write*, **sīgen**, *to sink*, **strīten**, *to quarrel*.

snīden , <i>to cut</i>	sneit	sniten	gesniten
dīhen , <i>to thrive</i>	dēch	digen	gedigen
rīsen , <i>to fall</i>	reis	rirn (risen)	gerirn (gerisen)

And similarly **līden**, *to suffer*, **mīden**, *to avoid*, **nīden**, *to envy*, **līhen**, *to lend*, **zīhen**, *to accuse*. See § 30.

§ 77. The following two verbs which are also used as weak verbs have mixed forms in the preterite and past participle:—

schriēn , <i>to scream</i>	schrē	schriuwen	geschriuwen
	schrei	schrūwen	geschrūwen
		schrirn	geschrirn
spīwen , <i>to vomit</i>	spē	spiwen	gespiwen
	spei	spiuwen	gespiuwen
		spūwen	gespūwen
		spirn	gespirn

CLASS II.

§ 78. The verbs of this class belong to the second ablaut-series (§ 12) and therefore have **ie** in the present, but **iu** in the present singular (§ 16); **ou** in the first and third pers. sing. of the preterite, but **ō** before **t, z, s** and **ch** (= Germanic **h**), § 18; **u** in the pret. plural; and **o** in the past participle, thus:—

biegen , <i>to bend</i>	biuge	bouc	bugen	gebogen
triefen , <i>to drop</i>	triufe	trouf	truffen	getroffen
bieten , <i>to offer</i>	biute	bōt	buten	geboten

61

schiezen, to shoot **schiuze schōz schuzzen geschozzen**

And similarly **klieben**, to cleave, **kriechen**, to creep, **liegen**, to lie, **riechen**, to smell, **schieben**, to shove, **vliegen**, to fly; **diezen**, to roar, **giezen**, to pour, **vliezen**, to flow.

sieden, to seethe **siude sōt suten gesoten**
ziehen, to draw **ziuhe zōch zugen gezogen**
kiesen, to choose **kius kōs kurn gekorn**

And similarly **vliehen**, to flee, **niesen**, to sneeze, **verliesen**, to lose, **vriesen**, to freeze. See § 30.

§ 79. On the stem-vowels in the following verbs, see § 16, note and § 36:—

bliuwen, to strike **bliuwe blou blūwen**
bliuwen gebliuwen
blouwen geblouwen

And similarly **briuwen**, to brew, **kiuwen**, to chew, **riuwen**, to pain.

§ 80. To this class also belong the three aorist presents:—

lūchen, to shut **liuche (lūche) louch luchen gelochen**
sūfen, to gulp down **sūfe souf suffen gesoffen**
sūgen, to suck **sūge souc sugen gesogen**

CLASS III.

§ 81. The verbs of this class belong to the third ablaut-series (§ 12), and include the strong verbs having a medial nasal or a liquid + consonant. Those with nasal + consonant have **i** throughout the present tense and **u** in the past participle; the others have **i** in the present singular, **ē** in the plural, and **o** in the past participle (see §§ 14, 15), thus:—

binden, to bind **binde bant bunden gebunden**
rinnen, to run **rinne ran runnen gerunnen**
singen, to sing **singe sanc sungen gesungen**

And similarly **brinnen**, to burn, **dringen**, to press, **entrinnen**, to escape, **gelingen**, to succeed, **gewinnen**, to gain, **schrinden**, to split, **sinken**, to sink, **sinnen**, to reflect, **spinnen**, to spin, **swimmen**, to swim, **trinken**, to drink, **vinden** (p.p. **vunden**), to find, **winden**, to wind. **beginnen**, to begin, pret. sing. **began** beside **begunde, begonde**, pl. **begunden**, p.p. **begunnen**.

bērgen, to hide **birge bare burgen geborgen**
hēlfen, to help **hilfe half hulfen geholfen**
stērbēn, to die **stirbe starp sturben gestorben**

And similarly **bevēlhen**, to order, **emphēlhen, enphēlhen**, to recommend, **gēlten**, to pay, **mēlken**, to milk, **schēlten**, to revile, **swēllen**, to swell, **verdērbēn**, to destroy, **wērfen**, to throw, **wērrēn**, to confuse, **wērdēn**, to become, pret. pl. **wurten, wurden**, p.p. **worten, (ge)worden**, see § 30.

CLASS IV.

§ 82. The verbs of this class belong to the fourth ablaut-series (§ 12). They include those strong verbs which have a liquid or a nasal before or after the stem-vowel, and a few others, thus:—

	ē	i	a	ā	o
nēmen , to take		nime	nam	nāmen	genomen
bērn , to bear		bir (§ 9, 1)	bar	bāren	geborn
stēln , to steal		stil (§ 9, 1)	stal	stālen	gestoln
brēchen , to break		briche	brach	brāchen	gebrochen
vēhtēn , to fight		vihte	vaht	vāhtēn	gevohtēn

And similarly **schērn**, to shear, **schrēcken**, to frighten, **sprēchen**, to speak, **vlēhtēn**, to plait, **zēmen** (p.p. also **gezēmen**), to be befitting, **stēchen**, to prick, **trēffen** (p.p. **troffen**), to hit; **dreschen**, to thrash, **leschen**, to be extinguished, see § 11, 1. **komen** (OHG. **quēman**), to come, **kume, quam, quāmen, komen**; on other forms of this verb, see § 36.

CLASS V.

§ 83. The verbs of this class belong to the fifth ablaut-series (§ 12). They include the strong verbs containing a medial consonant other than a nasal or liquid, thus:—

	ē	i	a	ā	ē
gēben , to give		gibe	gap	gāben	gegēben
jēhen , to say		gihe (§ 35)	jach	jāhen	gejēhen
sēhen , to see		sihe	sach	sāhen	gesēhen
wēgen , to move		wige	wac	wāgen	gewēgen

And similarly **geschēhen**, *to happen*, **knēten**, *to knead*, **mēzzen**, *to measure*, **pflēgen**, *to be accustomed*, **trēten**, *to tread*, **vergēzzen**, *to forget*, **wēben**, *to weave*.

wēsen, *to be* **wise was wāren gewēsen**

And similarly **genēsen** (pret. pl. also **genāsen**), *to recover*, **jēsen**, *to ferment*, **lēsen** (pret. pl. also **lāsen**), *to gather, read*. See § 30.

ēzzen, *to eat* **izze āz(az) āzen gēzzen** (§ 9, 7)
vrēzzen, *to devour* **vrizze vrāz vrāzen vrēzzen**

These verbs had a long vowel in the pret. singular in the oldest period of all the Germanic languages, cp. also Lat. **ēdī**.

64

§ 84. To this class also belong the three verbs:—

bit(t)en, *to beg* **bite bat bāten gebēten**
ligen, *to lie down* **lige lac lāgen gelēgen**
sitzen, *to sit* **sitze saz sāzen gesēzzen**

bit(t)en, OHG. **bitten** from ***bidjan**; **ligen**, OHG. **liggen** from ***ligjan**; **sitzen**, OHG. **sitzen** from ***sitjan**, see §§ 14, 31, 3. The inf. **ligen** is sometimes contracted to **līn**, see § 37.

CLASS VI.

§ 85. The verbs of this class belong to the sixth ablaut-series (§ 12), and accordingly have **a** in the present; **uo** in the pret. singular and plural; and **a** in the past participle. They have umlaut in the second and third pers. singular, as **grebes(t)**, **grebet**; **verst**, **vert**. See § 10.

graben, *to dig* **gruop gruoben gegraben**
tragen, *to carry* **truoc truogen getragen**
maln, *to grind* **muol muolen gemaln**
varn, *to go* **vuor vuoren gevarn**

And similarly **laden**, *to load*, **nagen**, *to gnaw*, **schaffen**, *to create*, **spanen**, *to entice*, **waschen**, *to wash*, **wahsen**, *to grow*, **waten**, *to wade*.

slahen, *to strike* **sluoc sluogen geslagen**
twahen, *to wash* **twuoc twuogen getwagen**

See § 30. The pret. sing. **sluoc**, **twuoc** for ***sluoch**, ***twuoch** were formed after the analogy of the pret. plural.

§ 86. To this class also belong:—

stān , stēn (§ 96), <i>to stand</i>	stuont	stuonden	gestanden
entseben (older entseven), <i>to perceive</i>	entsuop	entsuoben	entsaben
gewāhenen , <i>to mention</i>	gewuoc	gewuogen	gewagen
heben (older heven), <i>to raise</i>	huop	huoben	gehaben
swern (see § 35), <i>to swear</i>	swuor	swuoren	geswarn gesworn }

65

The pret. singular **stuont**, **entsuop**, **gewuoc**, **huop** for ***stuot** (cp. Engl. **stood**), ***entsuof**, ***gewuoch**, ***huof** were formed after the analogy of the pret. plural. On the **b**, **g** in the pret. plural, see § 30. The last four verbs in the list originally had a **j** in the present, which accounts for the umlaut, cp. OHG. **heffen**, Goth. **hafjan**, *to raise*. **heben** had its **b** from forms where it was regular.

CLASS VII.

§ 87. To this class belong the verbs which originally had reduplicated preterites. The present and past participle have the same stem-vowel; and the preterite singular and plural have **ie**. In OHG. the verbs which had **a**, **ā** or **ei** in the present had **ia** (older **ea**, **ē**) in the preterite; and those which had **ou** (**ō**), **uo** in the present had **io** (older **eo**) in the preterite. But in MHG. the **ia** and **io** regularly fell together in **ie** (§ 11, 3), so that all the preterites had **ie**.

bannen, *to banish* **bien bienen gebannen**
halten, *to hold* **hielt hielten gehalten**
slāfen, *to sleep* **slief sliefen geslāfen**
heizen, *to call* **hiez hiezen geheizn**
loufen, *to run* **lief liefen geloufen**
ruofen, *to call* **rief riefen geruofen**

And similarly **halsen**, *to embrace*, **salzen**, *to salt*, **spalten**, *to split*, **spannen**, *to span*, **vallen**, *to fall*, **valten**, *to fold*, **wallen**, *to bubble*; **bāgen**, *to quarrel*, **blāsen**, *to blow*, **brāten**, *to roast*, **lāzen** (see also § 99), *to let, leave*, **rāten**, *to advise*; **meizen**, *to cut*, **scheiden**, *to separate*, **sweiften**, *to rove*; **bōzen**, *to strike*, **stōzen**, *to push*, **houwen** (pret. **hiu** and **hie**, pl. **hiuwen**, **hiewen**), *to hew*, **wuofen**, *to bewail*.

66

gān, gēn, to go	gienc (gie)	giengen	(ge)gängen
hāhen (§ 29)	}, to hang	hienc (hie)	hiengen
hān (§ 38)			
vāhen (§ 29)	}, to catch	vienc (vie)	viengen
vān (§ 38)			
erren, ern, to plough	ier	ieren	gearn

On the interchange between **h** and **ng**, see § 30; **erren, ern** from older ***arjan**.

B. WEAK VERBS.

§ 88. The OHG. weak verbs were divided into three great classes according as the infinitive ended in **-en** from older ***-jan**, **-on**, or **-ēn**.

Inflectional tables in this section have been reformatted for greater readability. A representative screen shot of the original format is shown at the [end of the text](#).

The characteristic endings of the three OHG. classes were:—

		<i>Present.</i>		
		CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
Indic. sing.	{	-u	-ōn	-ēn
		-is(t)	-ōs(t)	-ēs(t)
		-it	-ōt	-ēt
„ plur.	{	-ēn	-ōn	-ēn
		-et	-ōt	-ēt
		-ent	-ōnt	-ēnt
Subj. sing.	{	-e	-o	-e
		-ēs(t)	-ōs(t)	-ēs(t)
		-e	-o	-e
„ plur.	{	-ēn	-ōn	-ēn
		-ēt	-ōt	-ēt
		-ēn	-ōn	-ēn
Imper. sing.	{	-i	-o	-e
		-ēn	-ōn	-ēn
„ plur.	{	-ēn	-ōn	-ēn
		-et	-ōt	-ēt

		<i>Preterite.</i>		
		CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
Indic. sing.	{	-ta, -ita	-ōta	-ēta
		-tōs(t), -itōs(t)	-ōtōs(t)	-ētōs(t)
		-ta, -ita	-ōta	-ēta
„ plur.	{	-tun, -itun	-ōtun	-ētun
		-tut, -itut	-ōtut	-ētut
		-tun, -itun	-ōtun	-ētun
Subj. sing.	{	-ti, -iti	-ōti	-ēti
		-tīs(t), -itīs(t)	-ōtīs(t)	-ētīs(t)
		-ti, -iti	-ōti	-ēti
„ plur.	{	-tīn, -itīn	-ōtīn	-ētīn
		-tīt, -itīt	-ōtīt	-ētīt
		-tīn, -itīn	-ōtīn	-ētīn

		<i>Past Participle.</i>		
Uninfl. form		-it	-ōt	-ēt
Infl. „		-tēr, -itēr	-ōtēr	-ētēr

Infinitive.

-en	-ōn	-ēn
------------	------------	------------

In OHG. the verbs of Class I were divided into two sub-divisions: (a) polysyllabic verbs and those containing an old long stem-syllable; (b) those which originally had a short stem-syllable (cp. § 31, 3). The former formed their preterite in **-ta**, and the latter in **-ita**; and similarly in the inflected form of the past participle. In MHG. all the unaccented vowels **i, e, a, o, u, ī, ē, ō** regularly fell together in **e** (§ 7), so that the old distinction between the endings of the three classes of verbs was to a great extent obliterated. The OHG. verbs with a short stem-syllable belonging to Classes II and III came in MHG. to be inflected entirely like sub-division (b) of Class

I; and those with a long stem-syllable mostly came to be inflected like sub-division (a) of Class I, see §§ 9, 2, 92.

Owing to all the OHG. unaccented vowels being weakened to **e** the MHG. endings are:—

68

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.:	-e -es(t) -et	-en -et -ent
„ Subj.:	-e -es(t) -e	-en -et -en
Pret. Indic. and Subj.:	-te, -ete -tes(t), -etes(t) -te, -ete	-ten, -eten -tet, -etet -ten, -eten
Imper.	-e	-en -et
P.P. Uninfl. form	-et	
Infl. „	-ter, -eter	
Infin.	-en.	

Final **-n** in the first pers. sing. of the pres. indicative of the old Classes II and III remained in early MHG., but during the MHG. period the first person was remodelled after the analogy of Class I.

NOTE.— Old forms with **ō (u)** for later **e** occasionally occur in verbs originally belonging to the OHG. Class II; and in like manner **ī** for **e** in the pret. subjunctive.

§ 89. The MHG. weak verbs are divided into two classes, according as the preterite is formed in **-te** or **-ete** (see however § 40). The inflexion of the present is the same in both classes.

CLASS I.

§ 90. To this class belong (1) verbs which have old long stem-syllables. Those having a mutated vowel in the present have the corresponding unmutated vowel in the preterite. The **i** which would have caused umlaut in the preterite disappeared in the prehistoric period of the language. The past participle generally has two forms: one with a mutated vowel, and the other without it, properly from the old inflected form which did not have umlaut. (2) Verbs having a short stem-vowel followed by a single consonant (**l**, **r**), and trisyllabic verbs containing an **l**, **n**, or **r** in the second syllable, as **zeln**, older **zellen** (§ 31, 3), *to count*, pret. **zelte** beside **zalte**, p.p. **gezelt** beside **gezalt**; **nern**, *to rescue*, pret. **nerte** (OHG. **nerita**), p.p. **genert**; and similarly **doln** (OHG. **dolōn**), *to tolerate*, **seln**, *to hand over*, **spiln**, *to play*, **weln**, *to choose*; **wern**, *to defend*; **wandeln** (OHG. **wantalōn**), *to change*, pret. **wandelte**; **vordern** (OHG. **fordarōn**), *to further*, pret. **vorderte**; **sēgenen** (OHG. **sēganōn**), *to bless*, pret. **sēgente**. See §§ 9, 1, 2, 92.

69

		<i>Present.</i>		
		INDIC.	SUBJ.	IMPER.
Sing.	1.	kenne	kenne	
	2.	kennes(t)	kennes(t)	kenne
	3.	kennet	kenne	
Plur.	1.	kennen	kennen	kennen
	2.	kennet	kennet	kennet, (-ent)
	3.	kennent	kennen	
<i>Preterite.</i>				
Sing.	1.	kante	kante	
	2.	kantes(t)	kantes(t)	
	3.	kante	kante	
Plur.	1.	kanten	kanten	
	2.	kantet	kantet	
	3.	kanten	kanten	

Infin. **kennen**, *to know*; Pres. Part. **kennende**; Past Part. **gekennet**, **gekant**.

And similarly with a large number of verbs, as **blüemen**, *to bloom*, **brennen**, *to burn*, **füllen**, *to fill*, **grüezen**, *to greet*, **hören**, *to hear*, **küssen**, *to kiss*, **lösen**, *to loose*, **nennen**, *to name*, **rennen**, *to run*, **senden** (pret. **sante**), *to send*, **senken**, *to sink*, **setzen** (pret. **satte**, **sazte**, p.p. **gesat**, **gesatz**, **gesetzt**), *to set*, **stellen**, *to place*, **süezen**, *to sweeten*, **vellen**, *to fell*, **wānen**, *to fancy*, **wünschen**, *to wish*; **gelouben**, *to believe*, **kēren**, *to turn*, **koufen**, *to buy*, **leiten** (pret. **leite**), *to lead*, **ougen**, *to show*, **suochen**, *to seek*. The verba pura have double forms in the present and preterite, as **dræjen**, **dræn** (§ 35), *to turn*, pret. **drâte** beside the new formation **dræjete**, **dræte**, and similarly **blüejēn**, *to bloom*, **müejēn**, *to trouble*, **rüejēn**, *to row*, **sæjen**, *to sow*, **wæjen**, *to blow*. Verbs with medial **ck** have double preterites, as **decken**, *to cover*, pret. **dacte** beside **dahte**, and similarly **drücken**, **drucken**, *to press*, **smecken**, *to taste*, **wecken**, *to*

70

awake. See also § 92.

§ 91. The following are irregular:—

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>P.P.</i>
denken , <i>to think</i>	dähte	gedäht (§§ 28, 29)
dunken , dünken , <i>to seem</i>	dūhte	gedūh (§§ 28, 29)
furhten , fürhten , <i>to fear</i>	vorhte	gevorht
wurken , würken , <i>to work</i>	worhte	geworht
bringen , <i>to bring</i>	brähte	gebräht (§§ 28, 29)

NOTE.— The second pers. sing. of **brähte** is **bræhte** or **brähtes(t)**, pret. subj. **bræhte**; and similarly with **dähte**; the subj. of **dūhte** is **dūhte** or **diuhte**.

CLASS II.

§ 92. The verbs belonging to this class form their preterite in **-ete** and their past participle in **-et**. In other respects Class II has the same endings as Class I.

It includes: (a) The dissyllabic verbs, having a short stem-vowel followed by a single consonant other than **l**, **r**, which in OHG. belonged to Classes II and III, as **loben** (OHG. **lobōn**), *to praise*, pret. **lobete**, p.p. **gelobet**; **leben** (OHG. **lēbēn**), *to live*, pret. **lēbete**, p.p. **gelēbet** (see § 88). (b) The dissyllabic verbs of OHG. Class I with a short stem-vowel followed by double consonants other than **ll** (see § 31, 3), as **legen**, older **leggen** (OHG. **leggen**), *to lay*, pret. **legete** or **leite** (§ 37), p.p. **geleget** or **geleit**; **denen**, older **dennen** (OHG. **dennen**), *to stretch*, pret. **denete**, p.p. **gedenet**.

71

Other examples belonging to Class II are: **bēten**, *to pray*, **dagen**, *to be silent*, **klagen**, *to complain*, **klēben**, *to stick*, **laden**, *to invite*, **namen**, *to name*, **sagen**, *to say*, pret. **sagete** and **seite** (§ 37).

The verbs with a long stem-syllable, which belonged to OHG. Classes II and III, went over in MHG. either into Class I (1), see § 90, or had preterites in **-te** beside **-ete**, as **danken**, *to thank*, pret. **dante** beside **dankete**, p.p. **gedanct** beside **gedanket**; **vrāgen**, *to ask*, pret. **vrāgte** beside **vrāgete**, p.p. **gevrāgt** beside **gevrāget**, and similarly **ahten**, *to observe*, **minnen**, *to love*, **trahten**, *to strive*, &c., see §§ 9, 2, 90; **dienen**, *to serve*, pret. **diende** (§ 40), &c.

C. MINOR GROUPS.

1. Preterite-Presents.

§ 93. These have strong preterites with a present meaning, from which new weak preterites have been formed. The 2nd pers. sg. ends in **-t**, and has the same stem-vowel as the 1st and 3rd pers. sg. The following verbs belong to this class:—

weiz, *I know*, 2nd pers. sg. **weist**; pl. **wizzen**; inf. **wizzen**; pres. p. **wizzende**; pret. **wisse**, **wesse**, **wiste** or **weste**; p.p. **gewist** or **gewest**.

touc, *I am of use*, inf. and pl. **tugen** or **tügen**; pret. **tohte**; subj. **töhte**.

gan, *I grant*, 2nd pers. sg. **ganst**; inf. and pl. **gunnen** or **günnen**; pret. **gunde**; subj. **gunde** or **günde**; p.p. **gegunnen**, **gegunnet**, or **gegunst**.

kan, *I know*, 2nd pers. sg. **kanst**; inf. and pl. **kunnen** or **künnen**; pret. **kunde** (**konde**); subj. **kunde** or **künde**.

72

darf, *I need*, 2nd pers. sg. **darft**; pl. **durfen** or **dürfen**; pret. **dorfte**; subj. **dörfte**; infin. and p.p. only in **bedürfen**, **bedorft**.

tar, *I dare, venture*, 2nd pers. sg. **tarst**; inf. and pl. **turren** or **türren**; pret. **torste**; subj. **törste**.

sol, *I shall*, 2nd pers. sg. **solt**; inf. and pl. **suln** or **süln**; pret. **solde** or **solte**.

mac, *I can*, 2nd pers. sg. **maht**; pl. **magen**, **megen**, **mugen**, or **mügen**; pret. **mahte** or **mohte**; subj. **mehte** (**mahte**) or **möhte**.

muoz, *I must*, 2nd pers. sg. **muost**; pl. **müezen**; pret. **muoste** or **muose**; subj. **müeste** or **müese**.

2. Anomalous Verbs.

§ 94. (1) **tuon**, *to do*.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	tuon (tuo)	tuo
	tuos(t)	tuos(t)
	tuot	tuo
Plur.	tuon	tuon
	tuot (tuont)	tuot
	tuont	tuon

INFIN.	tuon
IMPER.	tuo
PRES. P.	tuonde

Preterite.

Sing.	{	tēte (tēt)	tæte (tēte)
		tæte	tætes(t)
		tēte (tēt)	tæte
Plur.		tāten, (tæten, tēten)	tæten
		P.P. getān	

§ 95.

(2) **gān**, *to go*.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
Sing.	{	gān, gēn	gē (gā, gange)
		gās(t), gēs(t)	gēs(t) (gās(t), ganges(t))
		gāt, gēt	gē (gā, gange)
Plur.		gān, gēn	gēn (gān, gangen)

INFIN.	gān, gēn
IMPER.	ganc, genc, ginc (gā, gē)
PRES. P.	gānde, gēnde

Preterite.

Sing.	gienc or gie
Plur.	giengen
P.P.	(ge)gangen or gegān

§ 96.

(3) **stān**, *to stand*.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
Sing.	{	stān, stēn, stā, stē	stā, stē (stande), &c.
		stās(t), stēs(t)	
		stāt, stēt	
Plur.		stān, stēn	

INFIN.	stān, stēn
IMPER.	stā, stē, stant

Preterite.

	stuont
P.P.	gestanden or gestān

§ 97.

(4) **sīn**, **wēsen**, *to be*.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
Sing.	{	bin	sī (sīge, sīe)
		bis(t)	sīs(t) (sīges(t), sīes(t))
		ist	sī (sīge, sīe)
Plur.	{	birn, sīn	sīn (sīgen, sīen)
		birt, sīt	sīt (sīget, siet)
		sint	sīn (sīgen, sīen)

INFIN.	sīn, wēsen.	
Indic. Pret. Sing.	was;	pl. wāren (§ 30)
Subj. " "	wære;	pl. wāren
P.P.	gewēsen (gewēset)	

§ 98.

(5) **wellen**, *to will*.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	1. wil	welle
	2. wil, wilt	welles(t)
	3. wil	welle
Plur.	1. wellen, weln	wellen
	2. wellet, welt	wellet
	3. wellen, weln	wellen
Pret.	wolte or wolde (§ 40)	wolte or wölte
Infin.	wellen.	

3. Contracted Verbs.

§ 99.

(1) **lān** = **lāzen**, *to let, leave*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres.	lān	lān
	lās(t), læs(t)	lāt
	lāt (læt)	lān
Pret.	lie or liez (§ 87).	
Imper.	lā	lāt
Infin.	lān.	
P.P.	(ge)lān	

(2) **hān** = **haben**, *to have*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres.	hān	hān
	hās(t)	hāt
	hāt	hān
Pret.	hāte (hēte, hēt(e), hiet(e), hæte)	
	hātes(t)	
	&c.	
Subj. pres.	habe	
	habes(t)	
	&c.	
„ pret.	hæte, hete, hēte, hiete, hatte, &c.	
Infin.	hān.	
P.P.	gehabet, gehapt, gehāt.	

75

The contracted form **hān**, &c., is mostly used as an auxiliary.

CHAPTER VII

SYNTAX

CASES.

§ 100. **Accusative.** The accusative has much the same function as in NHG. It is sometimes used, however, where the dat. or a preposition would be required in NHG.:—**ēr vuor wazzer unde wēge**, *he went by water and land*. The acc. is used after **wol**, *well*, when used as an interjection, as **wol mich**. A double accusative is required not only after **lēren**, *to teach*, but also after **hēln**, *verhēln*, *to conceal*, **verdagen**, **verswigen**, *to keep secret*.

§ 101. **Dative.** **ruofen**, *to call*, and **schirmen**, *to protect*, take the dative. The dative is often used adverbially: **allenthalben**, *on all sides*, **wīlen(t)**, *formerly*, &c.

§ 102. **Genitive.** The genitives **hande**, **slahte**, **leie** = *manner* are used adverbially: **maneger hande**, **slahte**, *or leie*, *in many ways, manifoldly*.

The gen. is used in combination with the comparative of adjectives, as **dicker eines dūmes**, *thicker by the breadth of a thumb*. Indefinite and interrogative pronouns, used substantively, take the genitive: **iemen armer liute**, *any poor people*; **niht schoeneres**, *nothing more beautiful*; **dēs enmac niht sīn**, *that cannot be*; **waz mannes ēr wære**, *what kind of man he was*. In the same manner the rel. **swaz** may take the genitive: **swaz man vant dēr armen**, *whatever poor people one found*.

The genitive may be used predicatively:—**sīt sī dēs goteshūses sint**, *since they belong to the house of God*; **diu sorge ist mīn eines niht**, *I am not the only one who has sorrow*.

Impersonal verbs often take the genitive: **mich genüegēt dēs**, *that is enough for me*; **mich**

76

gezint dēs, *that pleases me*.

The genitives **dēs** and **wēs** may be used adverbially in the sense of *therefore, wherefore*; and likewise many nouns: **tages**, *by day*; **dēs sēlben tages**, *the same day*; **nahtes**, *by night*.

Interjections usually take the genitive: **owē mir mīnes leides!** *alas! for my grief*. **vil**, *much, many*; **mē(re)**, *more*; **wēnic**, **lützel**, *little*; **minner**, **minre**, *less*; and **genuoc**, *enough*, used as indeclinable substantives, are followed by the genitive. Cardinal numerals, used substantively, are also followed by the genitive: **zweizec starker man**, *twenty strong men*.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 103. The weak and strong forms are used in the same manner as in Mod. HG. **dirre**, *this*, is followed by the weak or strong form; **aller**, *all*, usually by the strong. The strong or weak form can be used after pronouns, as **ich armer** or **ich arme**, *I poor ...*. In the vocative the weak form without the article is used, as **guoten liute**, *(ye) good people*. When the same adjective refers to nouns of different gender, it is put in the neuter plural.

ein and the possessive pronouns are followed by the strong form in the Nom. and Acc. singular; by the strong or weak form in the pl. and Gen. and Dative singular.

77

The possessive pronouns are declined strong.

The uninflected form of the adjective is used side by side with the inflected in the Nom. singular, all genders, and Acc. singular neuter, when the adjective comes before the noun: **ein guot man**, *a good man*. When the adjective stands after the noun the uninflected form may be used without reference to number, gender, or case, **ein**, **dehein**, and the possessive pronouns have the uninflected form in the Nom. for all genders, and Acc. neuter. The uninflected form of **al**, *all*, can be used before all forms of the definite article: **in al dēr wërte**, *in all the world*. See § 55.

PRONOUNS.

§ 104. **im**, **ir**, pl. **in**, are used to express the dative of the reflexive pronoun. **dēr** is sometimes used pleonastically, as **dēr brunne**, **dēr was küele**, *the spring was cool*. **man** used as an indefinite pronoun can take the definite article along with it.

VERBS.

§ 105. **Number**. The verb can be used in the singular after a compound subject, as **Volkēr und Hagene sō sere wüeten began**, ... *began to rage so furiously*.

§ 106. **Tenses**. The fut. simple is expressed by **sol**, **muoz**, **wil** and the infin., or simply by the pres., as in OE.: **ich sol gān**, *I shall go*; **bin ich gnislich**, **sō genise ich**, *if I am curable, I shall recover*. For the fut. pf. the pf. is used: **daz ist schiere getān**, *that will soon have been done*. The pf. is expressed either by the simple pret. or the p.p. and the verbs **hān**, **sīn**; in subordinate sentences the pret. often has the meaning of the pluperfect: **dō du von ir schiede**, **zehant sie starp**, *she died immediately after thou hadst taken leave of her*.

78

The preterite acquires a pluperfect, and the present a future perfect meaning when the prefix **ge** is added to them: **swenne iuwer sun gewahset**, *when your son (shall have) has grown up*; **dō ich in gesach**, *when I had seen him*. The present participle with **sīn** is sometimes used as in English, see 'Arme Heinrich,' l. 24.

§ 107. **Voice**. The present and preterite passive are expressed by **wërden** and the p.p., and the corresponding perfect tenses by **sīn** and the p.p.

Pres. **ich wirde gelobet**.
Pret. **ich wart** „
Perf. **ich bin** „
Plupf. **ich was** „
Inf. **gelobet sīn**.

§ 108. **Negation**. Negation in sentences is expressed by **ne** (**en**, **n**) before the verb, and **niht** after it: **ēr enist guot**, *he is not good*. **niht** is frequently omitted, especially after the preterite presents, the verbs **wellen**, **lān**, sentences containing negative pronouns or adverbs, and in subordinate sentences.

en without **niht** is used with the subjunctive in subordinate sentences in the sense of *unless, if not, except that, when that, that not, &c.*: **dēn lip wil ich verliesen**, **si enwërde mīn wīp**, *I will die if she will not become my wife*; **ich wāne nieman in dēr wërte lēbe**, **ēr habe ein leit**, *I believe no one lives in the world who has not his trouble*.

en is further also used in the sense of Latin 'quin': **ich mac daz niht bevarn**, **mīrn wërde mīn ritterschaft benomen**, *I cannot prevent my knighthood being taken away from me*.

Line numbers have been removed from the prose passages. In the verse passages, some unstressed e's, and a few i's, were printed with an under-dot: ė i̇. This usage is not explained. Some under-dots may be flyspecks, and a few umlauts were uncertain.

I

BERTHOLD VON REGENSBURG.

His name was properly Berthold Lech. He was the most celebrated preacher of the thirteenth century. He died in Regensburg in 1272. The following extract is from a sermon on Matt. v. 8.

‘Sælic sint die armen: wan daz himelrîch ist ir,’ etc. Mit disen aht tugenden sint alle die ze himelrîche komen, die dâ sint, und mit den selben aht tugenden müezent noch alle die dar komen, die iemer mër dar komen sÛln. Nû wil ich die siben under wegen lân und wil niuwen von ir einer sagen, wan also vil guoter dinge an ir ieglicher ist; und von ir ieglicher wære gar vil und gar lanc sunderlichen ze sagenne; und wie manigiu untugent uns an disen ahte tugenden irret, daz würde eht von ieglicher gar lanc ze sagenne. Wan man ez allez in einer predigen niht verenden mac, noch in vieren, noch in zehenen, sô wil ich iu hiute niuwen sagen von den, die ein reine herze habent, und von den man hiute dâ liset in dem heiligen ewangelio ‘sælic sint, die reines herzen sint: die werdent got sehende.’ A Die sint wol von rehte sælic, die dâ got sehent. Ein übergÛlde ist ez aller der sælikeit, diu ie wart oder iemer mër eht werden mac, swer got ansehende eht wirt, alsô sÛeze und alsô wÛnneclîch ist diu gesiht, die man an got siht. Sô wart nie deheiner muoter ir kint nie sô liep, ân unser frouwen, und solte si ez drîe tage ane sehen ân underlâz, daz si anders niht enpflæge, wan eht si ir liebez kint solte an sehen: si æze an dem vierden tage vil gerner ein stÛcke brôtes. Und wolte ich vil gerner, daz ich alsô ein guot mensche wære, als daz wâr ist, daz ich iezuo reden wil. Ob daz alsô wære, daz man zuo einem menschen spræche, der iezuo bî gote ist, ‘du hâst zehen kint ûf ertrîche, und du solt in koufen allen samt, daz sie ère und guot haben unz an ir tût, dâ mit, daz du einigen ougenblic von gotes angesiht tuost, niuwen als lange als einz sîn hant möht umbe kÛren, und sich danne wider zuo gote, und du solt dîn ougen niemer mër von im kÛren’: der mensche entæte sîn niht. Also wâr, herre, dîn wârheit ist, also wâr ist disiu rede, daz er disiu zehen kint unze an ir tût ã nâch dem almuosen lieze gÛn, ã danne er sich die kleine wîle von gote wolte wenden. In habent die engel wol sehzc hundert jâr an gesehen, und sehent in hiute als gerne als des êrsten tages. Und sie sint ouch alle samt sam des êrsten tages, dô sie got an sehende wurden. Dô wart ir deheiner sît nie eltlicher danne des êrsten tages, und sint doch sider wol sehzc hundert jâr alt. Swelher hundert jâr alt würde under uns, der wære den liuten also smæhe an ze sehenne von ungestaltheit und von dem gebresten, den daz alter an im hæte gemaht: sô mâlet man die engele—dâ sehet ir wol, swâ man sie mâlt, daz man sie eht anders niht enmâlt wan als ein kint von fünf jâren, als junclîch, oder von sehn. Wan alle, die got sehent, die werdent niemer eltlicher, die in in himelrîche sehent in sînen freuden und in sînen èren. Ûf ertrîche sehen wir in alle tage in sînem gewalte. Dehein irdenischer muot noch irdenisch lîp möhte daz niht erlîden, daz in dehein irdenisch ouge iemer an gesehen möhte in sînen freuden und in sînen èren, als er ze himelrîche ist. Wir sagen iu ettewenne ein glîchnisse, wie schœne got sî. Seht, allez daz wir iemer gesagen kÛnnen oder mÛgen, daz ist rehte dem glîche, als obe ein kint uns solte sagen, ob ez mÛglich wære, von aller der wirde und von aller der gezierde, die diu werlt hât, von der liechten sunnen, von den liechten sternen, von edelre gesteine craft und von ir maniger slahte varwe, von der edelen wÛrze craft und von dem edelen gesmacke, und von der rîchen gezierde, die man ûzer sîden und ûzer golde machet in dirre werlte, und von maniger hande sÛezen stimme, die diu werlt hât, von vögeln sange und von seitenspil, und von maniger hande bluomen varwe, und von aller der gezierde, die disiu werlt hât. Also unmÛglich unde also unkuntlichen eime kinde dâ von ze redenne ist, als unkunt ist ouch uns dâ von ze redenne, von der unsegelichen wÛnne, diu dâ ze himel ist, und von dem wÛnneclîchen antlÛtze des lebendigen gotes. Wan alliu diu freude, diu dâ ze himele ist, der ist niht wan von dem schîne, der von unsers herren antlÛtze gÛt. Und rehte als alle sternen ir lieht von der sunnen nement, alsô habent alle heiligen ir gezierde und ir schônheit von gote, und engele und allez himelische her. Reht als alle die sternen des himeles, der mâne und die planÛten, grôz und kleine, die habent alle samt ir lieht von der sunnen, diu uns dâ liuhtet: und alsô hât allez himelische her, engel und heiligen, die hÛhesten und die minnesten, die habent alle samt ir freude und ir wÛnne und ir gezierde und die ère und die wirde und ouch die schœnde, daz habent sie alle samt von der angesichte gotes, daz sie got an sehent. Die engele, die dâ unser hÛetent, die sehent in ze aller zît an, als ob sie bî im wæren. Wan alliu diu freude, diu in himelrîche ist, diu diuhte sie ze nihte, solten sie got niht an sehen. Und dâ von ‘sælic sint, die reines herzen sint; wan sie werdent got sehende.’ Nu sehent, wie sælic die sint, die dâ reinez herze tragent. Ir, junge werlt, die noch unbewollen sint mit sÛnden, behaltent iuwer herze vor allen tÛetlichen sÛnden, sô werdent ir got sehende in solîchen freuden und in sô grôzen èren, die ouge nie gesach oder òre nie gehôrte, also sant Paulus dâ sprichet; und also sant Johannes sprichet: ‘wær ez mÛglich, daz man ez allez samt geschriben möhte, sô möhte diu werlt diu buoch in ir niht behalten, dâ ez an gestÛende, daz ich gesach. Und allez, daz ich gesach, daz was niht wan got alleine.’ Und dar umbe möhten wir doch gerne ze dem himelrîche komen und drumbe arbeiten. Ob uns niht diu minne und diu liebe dar twÛnge, der wir gote schuldic sîn, seht, sô möhten wir dar umbe dar komen, durch daz wunder, daz dâ ist. Ez ist maniger vor mir: der im von sô getâner freude seite, daz si jenhalf meres wære, er füere gar gerinclîchen dar von hinnen

über mer, niuwen daz erz gesæhe. Sō möhtent ir hundertstunt gerner dar umb arbeiten, daz irz iemer mēre ēwiclichen niezen soltet. Die vil wūneclīchen angesiht des almehtigen gotes und der himelischen küniginne ze der zeswen sīner sīten in guldiner wæte, die möhtet ir gerne an sehen. Wan würde iu einiger anblic, sō wære in alliu diu freude und diu ēre und aller der wollust, den diu werlt ie gewan, daz wær iu hinne für als widerzæme und ouch also unmære, reht als sant Paulus dā sprach. Nu hœret wie er sprach; er sprach: 'alliu diu ēre und diu freude und daz gemach, diu disiu werlt ie gewan von keisern und von künigen, wider der freude, diu in himelrīch ist; als widerzæme einem wære ein diep an einem galgen, als kurz einem diu wīle dā mite wære, daz er einen erhangen man triuten solte, wider aller der freude, die diu werlt hāt: also widerzæme ist mir diu freude aller der werlte wider der ewigen freude.' Ei wol iuch wart, daz iuch iuwer muoter ie getruoc, die sō getāne freude sūln besitzen. Der ist, ob got wil, vil maniger vor minen ougen. Ouch ist maniger, der vil kleine freude dar für nimt hie ūf ertrīche, und daz dem guoten sante Paulen gar versmāhte, des wirt im der tūsentste teil niht. Und die habent ūbel kouft, die sō übergrōze freude gebent umb ein sō kurzez freudelīn in dirre werlte. Die habent ūbel gevarn; wan sie habent weder hie noch dort niht. Als ich iezuo sprach, rehte in glīcher wīse, rehte also alle sternen des himeles ir lieht von der sunnen habent, alsō hāt allez himelisch her ir lieht von dem wāren sunnen, sīt danne unser herre der wāre sunne und daz wāre lieht ist, also der guote sant Johannes dā sprichet. Der hei et in daz wāre lieht; als ouch daz vil wār ist: wan er ist daz wāre lieht, daz niemer mēr verlischet. Und alle, die von sīme gotvarwen liehte enzündet werdent, die erleschent ouch niemer mēre von der schönheit, die sie von dem wāren sunnen hānt. Und als vil diu sunne liehter und gelpfer ist, danne wir dā sehen, rehte als vil diu liehtes und glastes über alle sterne hāt, die an dem himel stēnt: als vil hāt der wāre sunne in himelrīche schīnes und glastes mēr über alle engele und ist geschœnet und gewirdet an allen ēren, also billich ist. Und dā von sint sie sælic, die ein reinez herze habent; wan si werdent got sehende.

83

II

THE SWABIAN LANTREHTBUOCH.

This work was compiled by David von Augsburg, about 1280 A.D.

HIE HEBET SICH AN DAZ LANTREHTBUOCH.

Herre got, himelischer vater, durch dīne milte güete geschüefe du den menschen in drīvaltiger werdikeit. Diu ērste, daz er nāch dir gebildet ist. Daz ist ouch ein alsō hōhiu werdikeit, der dir allez menschlich künne sunderlīchen immer danken sol. Wan des haben wir gar michel reht, vil lieber herre, himelischer vater, sīt du uns zuo dīner hōhen gotheit alsō werdiclichen geedelt hāt. Diu ander werdikeit, dā du, herre got, almāhtic schepfer, den menschen zuo geschaffen hāt, daz ist diu, daz du alle dise werelt, die sunnen unde den mānen, die sterne unde diu vier element, viur, wazzer, luft unde die erden, die vogel in den lūften, die vische in dem wāge, diu tier in dem walde, die wūrme in der erden, golt unde edel gesteine, der edeln wūrze sūezen smac, der bluomen liehte varwe, der boume fruht unde ēt alle crēatūre: daz hāt du, herre, allez dem menschen ze nutze unde ze dienste geschaffen durch die triuwe unde durch die minne, die du ze dem menschen hetest. Diu dritte werdikeit, dā du, herre, den menschen mit gewirdet unde geedelt hāt, daz ist diu, daz der mensche die wirde unde die ēre, die vreude unde die wūne immer mit dir ēwiclichen niezen sol. Der werelde dienst unde nuz hāt du, herre, dem menschen umbe sust gegeben ze einer manunge unde ze einem vordilde. Sīt des sō vil ist, des du, herre, dem menschen umbe sust gegeben hāt, dā bī sol der mensche nu trahten, sō mege des wol gar übermæziclichen vil sīn, des du dem menschen umbe sīnen dienst geben wilt. Unde dar umbe sol ein iegelich mensche got dienen mit ganzen triuwen; wan der lōn ist alsō übermæziclichen grōz, daz in herzen sīn nie betrachten möhte noch menschen zunge nie gesprechen möhte, noch ougen sehen künde in nie beliuhten, noch ōre nie gehœren. Daz wir nu got der hōhen werdikeit gedanken unde den grōzen lōn verdienen, des helfe uns der almāhtige got. āmen.

84

Sīt uns got in sō hōher werdikeit geschaffen hāt, sō wil er ouch, daz wir werdez leben haben, unde daz wir einander wirde unde ēre erbieuten, triuwe unde wārheit, niht haz unde nīt einander tragen. Wir sullen mit frīde unde mit suone under einander leben. Fridlich leben hāt unser herre got liep. Wan er kom von himelrīche ūf erderīche durch anders niht wan durch den rehten frīde, daz er uns einen rehten frīde schüefe vor der ewigen marter, ob wir selben wellen. Unde dā von sungen die engel ob der krippen: '*Gloria in excelsis deo et in terra pax hominibus bonae voluntatis*'—'Gots ēre in dem himel unde guot frīde ūf der erden allen den, die guoten willen habent ūf erderīche!' Dō unser herre got hie ūf erderīche gie, sō was daz ie sīn ellich wort: '*Pax vobis!*' daz sprichet: 'der frīde sī mit iu!' unde alsō sprach er alle zīt zuo sīnen jungern unde zuo andern liuten. Unde dā bī suln wir merken, wie rehte liep der almehtige got den rehten vride hāt. Wan dō er von erderīche wider ūf zuo himel fuor, dō sprach er aber zuo sīnen jungern: 'der vride sī mit iu!' unde enphalh dem guoten Sant Pēter, daz er phleger wære über den rehten frīde, unde gap im den gewalt, daz er den himel ūf slūzze allen den, die den frīde hielten, unde swer den frīde bræche, daz er dem den himel vor beslūzze. Daz ist alsō gesprochen: ēt alle, die diu gebot unsers herren zebrechent, die habent ouch den rehten frīde gebrochen. Daz ist ouch von gote reht, swer diu gebot unsers herren zebrichet, daz man dem den himel vor besliuzet, sīt uns got nu geholfen hāt, daz wir mit rehtem leben unde mit fridlichem leben daz himelrīch verdienen mügen. Wan daz was niht vor gotes geburt, swie wol der mensche tæet in aller der werelde, sō mohte er doch ze dem himelrīch niht komen. Got geschuof des ērsten himel unde erden, dar nāch den menschen unde sazte in in daz paradys. Der zebdach die gehōrsam uns allen ze schaden; dar umbe gienge wir irre sam diu hirtelōsen schāf, daz wir in daz himelrīch niht mohten, unz an die zīt, daz uns got den wec dar wīste mit sīner marter, unde dar umbe solde wir got immer loben

85

unde êren von allem unserm herzen unde von aller unserre sêle unde von aller unserre maht, daz wir nu sô wol ze den êwigen freuden kæmen, ob wir wolden; daz hie vor manigen heiligen patriarken unde prophêten tiure was. Diu genâde unde diu sælikeit ist uns kristen liuten nu widervaren, daz wir nu wol daz himelrîch mugen verdienen. Unde swer des niht entuot unde diu gebot unsers herren zebrîchet, daz rîchet er billîchen an im.

VON VRÏEN LIUTEN.

Wir zelen drîer hande vrïen. Der heizent eine sempervrïen: daz sint die vrïen herren, als fürsten unde die ander frien ze man hânt. Sô heizent die andern mîter vrïen: daz sint die, die der hōhen vrïen man sint. Die driten vrïen daz sint die vrïen lantsæzen, die gebūren, die dā vrï sint. Der hât ieglicher sîn sunder reht, als wir her nâch wol bescheiden.

VON TIUTSCHER LIUTE ÊREN.

Die tiutschen kiesent den kunic: daz erwarb in der kunic Karl. Swenne er gewihet wirt unt ūf den stuol ze Ache gesetzt wirt mit der willen, die in erwelt hânt, sô hât er kuniclîchen gewalt unde namen.—Den kunic kuset man ze rihter umbe eigen unde umbe lêhen unde über iegliches menschen lip unde umbe allez, daz vür in ze klagen kumet. Der keiser mac in allen landen niht gesîn, unde mac allez ungerihte niht verrihten. Dā von lihēt er den fürsten unde andern herren wereltlîch gerihte. An die vierten hant mac dehein gerihte nimmer komen mit rehte, dā man umbe menschenbluot rihten sol ode umbe alle vrevel.

86

III
HARTMAN VON OUWE.

He was born somewhere between 1160-1170, in the neighbourhood of Rottenburg in Swabia, and died about 1220.

The following extract is taken from Paul's edition: Der Arme Heinrich, Halle, 1882.

Ein ritter sô gelêret was
daz er an den buochen las
swaz er dar an geschriben vant.
der was Hartman genant,
dienstman was er ze Ouwe. 5
er nam im mange schouwe
an mislîchen buochen:
dar an begunde er suochen
ob er iht des funde
dā mite er swære stunde 10
mōhte senfter machen,
und von sô gewanten sachen
daz gotes êren tōhte
und dā mite er sich mōhte
gelieben den liuten. 15
nu beginnet er in diuten
ein rede die er geschriben vant.
dar umbe hât er sich genant,
daz er sîner arbeit
die er dar an hât geleit 20
iht âne lōn belibe,
und swer nâch sînem lîbe
sî hœere sagen oder lese,
daz er im bittende wese
der sêle heiles hin ze gote. 25
man seit, er sî sîn selbes bote
unde erlœse sich dā mite,
swer über des andern schulde bite.
Er las ditze mære,
wie ein herre wære 30
ze Swâben gesezzen:
an dem enwas vergezzen
deheiner der tugende
die ein ritter in sîner jugende
ze vollem lobe haben sol. 35
man sprach dō niemen alsô wol
in allen den landen.
er hete ze sînen handen
geburt und dar zuo rîcheit:
ouch was sîn tugent vil breit. 40
swie ganz sîn habe wære,
sîn geburt unwandelbære
und wol den fürsten gelîch,
doch was er unnâch alsô rîch
der gebürte und des guotes 45

87

sō der ēren und des muotes.
Sīn name der was erkennelich,
und hiez der herre Heinrich,
und was von Ouwe geborn. 50
sīn herze hāte versworn
valsch und alle törperheit,
und behielt ouch vaste den eit
stæte unz an sīn ende.
ān alle missewende 55
stuont sī ēre und sīn leben.
im was der rehte wunsch gegeben
ze werltlichen ēren:
die kunde er wol gemēren
mit aller hande reiner tugent.
er was ein bluome der jugent, 60
der werlte frōude ein spiegelglas.
88 stæter triuwe ein adamas,
ein ganziu krōne der zuht.
er was der nōthaften fluht,
ein schilt sīner māge, 65
der milte ein glīchiu wāge:
im enwart über noch gebrast.
er truoc den arbeitsamen last
der ēren über rücke.
er was des rātes brücke, 70
und sanc vil wol von minnen.
alsus kund er gewinnen
der werlte lop unde prīs.
er was hübesch und dar zuo wīs.
Dō der herre Heinrich 75
alsō geniete sich
ēren unde guotes
und frœliches muotes
und werltlicher wünne
(er was für al sīn künne 80
geprīset unde geēret),
sīn höher muot wart verkēret
in ein leben gar geneiget.
an im wart erzeiget,
also ouch an Absolōne, 85
daz diu üppige krōne
werltlicher sūeze
vellet under fūeze
ab ir besten werdekeit,
als uns diu schrift hāt geseit. 90
ez spricht an einer stete dā,
‘mēdiā vītā
in morte sumus’:
daz bediutet sich alsus,
daz wir in dem tōde sweben 95
sō wir aller beste wænen leben.
89 Dirre werlte veste,
ir stæte, unde ir beste
unde ir grøeste magenkraft,
diu stāt āne meisterschaft. 100
des muge wir an der kerzen sehen
ein wārez bilde geschehen,
daz sī zeiner aschen wirt
enmitten dō sī lieht birt.
wir sīn von brøeden sachen. 105
nū sehent wie unser lachen
mit weinen erlischet.
unser sūeze ist vermischet
mit bitterre gallen.
unser bluome der muoz vallen 110
so er allergrūenest wænet sīn.
an hern Heinrīche wart wol schīn,
der in dem hōhesten werde
lebet uf dirre erde,
derst der versmæhete vor gote. 115
er viel von sīme gebote
ab sīner besten werdekeit
in ein versmæhelichez leit:
in ergreif diu miselsuht.
dō man die swæren gotes zuht 120

gesach an sīnem libe,
 manne unde wībe
 wart er dō widerzæme.
 nū sehent wie genæme
 er ē der werlte wære, 125
 und wart nū also unmære
 daz in niemen gerne an sach:
 also ouch Jōbe geschach,
 dem edeln und dem rīchen,
 der ouch vil jæmerlichen 130
 dem miste wart ze teile
 mitten in sime heile.

90 Und dō der arme Heinrich
 alrēst verstuont sich
 daz er der werlte widerstuont, 135
 als alle sīne gelīchen tuont,
 dō schiet in sīn bitter leit
 von Jōbes gedultikeit.
 wan ez leit Jōb der guote
 mit gedultigem muote, 140
 do ez ime ze līdenne geschach,
 durch der sēle gemacht.
 den siechtuom und die smācheit
 die er von der werlte leit,
 des lobet er got und frōute sich. 145
 dō tet der arme Heinrich
 leider niender alsō:
 wan er was trūrec unde unfrō.
 sīn swebendez herze daz verswanc,
 sīn swimmendiu frōude ertranc, 150
 sīn hōchvart muoste vallen,
 sīn honic wart ze gallen,
 ein swinde vīnster donreslac
 zerbrach im sīnen mitten tac,
 ein trūebez wolken unde dic 155
 bedaht' im sīner sunnen blic.
 er sente sich vil sēre
 daz er sō manege ēre
 hinder im müeste lāzen.
 verfluochet und verwāzen 160
 wart vil ofte der tac
 dā sīn geburt ane lac.

Ein wēnic frōuwet er sich doch
 von eime trōste dannoch:
 wan im wart dicke geseit 165
 daz disiu selbe siecheit
 wære vil mislich
 und etelīchiu gnislich.
 des wart vil maneger slahte
 sīn gedinge und sīn ahte. 170
 er gedāhte daz er wære
 vil līhte genisbære,
 und fuor alsō drāte
 nāch der arzāte rāte
 gegen Munpasiliere. 175
 dā vant er vil schiere
 niht wan den untrōst
 daz er niemer würde erlōst.

Daz hōrte er vil ungerne,
 und fuor gegen Sālerne 180
 und suochte ouch dā durch genist
 der wīsen arzāte list.
 den besten meister er dā vant.
 der seite ime zehant
 ein seltsæne mære, 185
 daz er genislich wære
 und wære doch iemer ungenesen.
 dō sprach er 'wie mac daz wesen?
 diu rede ist harte unmūgelich.
 bin ich gnislich, sō genise ich: 190
 und swaz mir für wirt geleit
 von guote oder von arbeit,
 daz trūwe ich vollebringen.'
 'nū lāt daz gedingen'
 sprach der meister aber dō: 195

'iuwēre sūhte ist alsō
 (waz frumet daz ichz iu kunt tuo?):
 dā hœret arzenīe zuo:
 des wæret ir genislich. 200
 nu enist ab nieman sō rīch
 noch von sō starken sinnen
 der sī mūge gewinnen.
 des sint ir iemer ungenesen,
 got enwelle der arzāt wesen.'
 Dō sprach der arme Heinrich 205
 'war umbe untrœstent ir mich?
 jā hān ich guotes wol die kraft:
 ir enwellent iuwer meisterschaft
 und iuwer reht ouch brechen
 und dar zuo versprechen 210
 beidiu mīn silber und mīn golt,
 ich mache iuch mir alsō holt
 daz ir mich harte gerne ernert.'
 'mir wære der wille unrewert'
 sprach der meister aber dō: 215
 'und wære der arzenīe alsō
 daz man sī veile funde
 oder daz man sī kunde
 mit deheinen dingē erwerben,
 ich enlieze iuch niht verderben. 220
 nu enmac des leider niht sīn:
 dā von muoz iu diu helfe mīn
 durch alle nōt sīn versaget.
 ir müesent haben eine maget
 diu vollen ērbære 225
 und ouch des willen wære
 daz sī den tōt durch iuch lite.
 nu enist ez niht der liute site
 daz ez iemen gerne tuo.
 sō hœrt ouch anders niht dar zuo 230
 niwan der megede herzen bluot:
 daz wære für iuwer suht guot.'
 Nu erkantē der arme Heinrich
 daz daz wære unmügelich
 daz iemen den erwürbe 235
 der gerne für in stürbe.
 93 alsus was im der trōst benomen
 ūf den er dar was komen,
 und dar nāch für die selben frist
 hāt er ze sīner genist 240
 dehein gedinge mēre.
 des wart sīn herzesēre
 alsō kreftic unde grōz
 daz in des aller meist verdrōz,
 ob er langer solte leben. 245
 nū fuor er heim und begunde geben
 sīn erbe und ouch sīn varnde guot,
 als in dō sīn selbes muot
 und wiser rāt lērte,
 da erz aller bestē bekērte. 250
 er begundē bescheidenlichen
 sīn armen friunde rīchen
 und trōste ouch frōmde armen,
 daz sich got erbarmen
 geruochte über der sēle heil: 255
 gotes hiusern viel daz ander teil.
 alsus sō tet er sich abe
 bescheidenlichen sīner habe
 unz an ein geriute:
 dar flōch er die liute. 260
 disiu jæmerliche geschicht
 diu was sīn eines klage niht:
 in klagetē elliu diu lant
 dā er inne was erkant,
 und ouch von vrōmden landen 265
 die in nāch sage erkanden.
 Der ē ditz geriute
 und der ez dannoch biute,
 daz was ein frīer būman
 der vil selten ie gewan 270

94 dehein grōz ungemach,
 daz andern gebüren doch geschach,
 die wirs geherret wāren,
 und sī die niht verbāren
 beidiu mit stiure und mit bete. 275
 swaz dirre gebüre gerne tete,
 des dūhte sinen herren gnuoc:
 dar zuo er in übertruoc
 daz er dehein arbeit
 von frōmdem gewalte leit. 280
 des was deheiner sīn gelich
 in dem lande alsō rīch.
 zuo deme zōch sich
 sīn herre, der arme Heinrich.
 swaz er in het ē gespart, 285
 wie wol daz nū gedienet wart
 und wie schöne er sīn genōz!
 wan in vil lützel des verdrōz
 swaz im geschach durch in.
 er hete die triuwe und ouch den sin 290
 daz er vil willeclīche leit
 den kumber und die arbeit
 diu ime ze lidenne geschach.
 er schuof ime rīch gemach.
 Got hete dem meiger gegeben 295
 nāch sīner ahte ein reinez leben.
 er hete ein wol erbeiten līp
 und ein wol werbendez wīp,
 dar zuo het er schoenu kint,
 diu gar des mannes frōude sint, 300
 unde hete, sō man saget,
 under den kinden eine maget,
 ein kint von ahte jāren:
 daz kunde wol gebāren
 sō rehte gūetlichen: 305
 sī wolte nie entwīchen
 von ir herren einen fuoz:
 umb sīne hulde und sīnen gruoꝝ
 sō diene si ime alle wege
 mit ir gūetlichen pflege. 310
 sī was ouch sō genæme
 daz sī wol gezæme
 ze kinde deme rīche
 an ir wætliche.
 Die andern heten den sin 315
 daz sī ze rehter māze in
 wol gemīden kunden:
 sō flōch sī zallen stunden
 zuo ime und niender anders war.
 sī was sīn kurzewīle gar. 320
 sī hete gar ir gemüete
 mit reiner kindes gūete
 an ir herren gewant,
 daz man sī zallen zīten vant
 under ir herren fuoꝝe. 325
 mit sūeꝝer unmuoꝝe
 wonte sī ir herren bī.
 dar zuo sō liebte er ouch sī
 swā mite sō er mohte,
 und daz der meide tohte 330
 zuo ir kintlichen spil,
 des gab der herre ir vil.
 ouch half in sēre daz diu kint
 sō līhte ze gewenenne sint.
 er gewan ir swaz er veile vant, 335
 spiegel unde hārbant,
 gürtel unde vingerlīn
 und swaz kinden liep solte sīn.
 mit dienste brāhte er s' ūf die vart
 daz sī im alsō heimlich wart 340
 daz er sī sīn gemahela hiez.
 diu guote maget in liez
 belīben selten eine:
 er dūhte sī vil reine.
 swie starke ir daz geriete 345

diu kindische miete,
iedoch geliebte irz aller meist
von gotes gebe ein süezer geist.

Ir dienst war sō gütlich.

dō dō der arme Heinrich 350

driu jār dā getwelte
unde im got gequelte
mit grōzem jāmer den līp,
nū saz der meier und sīn wīp

unde ir tohter, diu maget 355

von der ich iu ē hān gesaget,
bī im in ir unmüezekeit
und begunden klagen ir herren leit.

diu klage tet in michel nōt:
wan sī vorhten daz sīn tot 360

sī sēre solte letzen
und vil gar entsetzen

ēren unde guotes
und daz herters muotes 365

würde ein ander herre.

si gedāhten alsō verre
unz dirre selbe būman

alsus frāgen began.

Er sprach 'lieber herre mīn,
möht ez mit iuwarn hulden sīn, 370

ich frāgte vil gerne,
sō vil ze Sālerne

von arzenīen meister ist,
wie kumet daz ir deheines list 375

ze iuwerme ungesunde
niht gerāten kunde?

97

herre, des wundert mich.'

dō holte der arme Heinrich
tiefen süft von herzen 380

mit bitterlichem smerzen:
mit solher riuwe er dō sprach

daz ime der süft daz wort zerbrach.
'Ich hān disen schemelīchen spot

vil wol gedienet umbe got. 385

wan dū sæhe wol hie vor
daz hōh offen stuont mīn tor

nāch werltlicher wünne
und daz niemen in sīnem künne

sīnen willen baz hete dan ich:
und was daz doch unmügelich, 390

wan ich enhete niht gar.
dō nam ich sīn vil kleine war

der mir daz selbe wunschleben
von sīnen gnāden hete gegeben. 395

daz herze mir dō alsō stuont
als alle werlttören tuont,

den daz saget ir muot
daz sī ēre unde guot

āne got mügen hān.
sus troug ouch mich mīn tumber 400

wān,
wan ich in lützel ane sach

von des genāden mir geschach
vil ēren unde guotes.

dō dō des hōhen muotes
den hōhen portenærē bedrōz, 405

die sælden porte er mir beslōz.
dane kum ich leider niemer in:

daz verworhte mir mīn tumber sin.
got hāt durch rāche an mich geleit 410

ein sus gewante siecheit
die niemen mag erlösen,

98

nū versmæhent mich die böesen,
die biderben ruochent mīn niht.

swie böese er ist der mich gesiht,
des boeser muoz ich dannoch sīn. 415

sīn unwert tuot er mir schīn:
er wirfet diu ougen abe mir.

nū schīnet ērste an dir
dīn triuwe die dū hāst,

daz dū mich siechen bī dir lāst 420
 und von mir niht enfliuhest.
 swie dū mich niht enschiuhest,
 swie ich niemen liep sī danne dir,
 swie vil dīns heiles stē an mir,
 du vertrüegest doch wol mīnen tōt. 425
 nū wes unwert und wes nōt
 wart ie zer werlte merre?
 hie vor was ich dīn herre
 und bin dīn dürftige nū.
 mīn lieber friunt, nu koufest dū 430
 und mīn gemahle und dīn wīp
 an mir den ēwigen līp
 daz dū mich siechen bī dir lāst.
 des dū mich gefrāget hāst,
 daz sage ich dir vil gerne. 435
 ichn kunde ze Sālerne
 einen meister niender vinden
 der sich mīn underwinden
 getörste oder wolte.
 wan dā mite ich solte 440
 mīner sūhte genesen,
 daz müeste ein solhiu sache wesen
 die in der werlte nieman
 mit nihte gewinnen kan.
 mir wart niht anders dā gesaget 445
 wan ich müeste haben eine maget
 diu vollen manbære
 und ouch des willen wære
 daz sī den tōt durch mich lite
 und man sī zuo dem herzen snite, 450
 und mir wære niht anders guot
 wan von ir herzen daz bluot.
 nū ist genuoc unmügelich
 daz ir deheiniu durch mich
 gerne līde den tōt. 455
 des muoz, ich schemeliche nōt
 tragen unz an mīn ende.
 daz mirz got schiere sende!
 Daz er dem vater hete gesagt,
 daz erhörte ouch diu reine magt: 460
 wan ez hete diu vil sūeze
 ir lieben herren fūeze
 stānde in ir schōzen,
 man möhte wol genōzen
 ir kintlich gemüete 465
 hin ze der engel güete.
 sīner rede nam sī war
 unde marhte sī ouch gar:
 sī enkam von ir herzen nie
 unz man des nahtes slāfen gie. 470
 dō sī zir vater fūezen lac
 und ouch ir muoter, sō sī pflac,
 und sī beide entsliefen,
 manegen sūft tiefen
 holte sī von herzen. 475
 umbe ir herren smerzen
 wart ir riuwe alsō grōz
 daz ir ougen regen begōz
 der slāfenden fūeze,
 sus erwachte sī diu sūeze. 480
 Dō sī der trehene empfunden,
 si erwachten und begunden
 sī frāgen waz ir wære
 und welher hande swære
 sī alsō stille möhte klagen. 485
 nu enwolte sī es in niht sagen,
 wan daz ir vater aber tete
 vil manege drō unde bete
 daz sī ez ime wolte sagen.
 sī sprach 'ir möhtent mit mir 490
 klagen.
 waz möhte uns mē gewerren
 danne umb unsern herren,
 daz wir den suln verliesen

und mit ime verkiesen
 beide guot und êre? 495
 wir gewinnen niemer mēre
 deheinen herren alsō guot
 der uns tuo daz er uns tuot.
 Sī sprächen 'tohter, dū hāst wār.
 nū frumet uns leider niht ein hār 500
 unser riuwe und dīn klage:
 liebez kint, dā von gedage.
 ez ist uns alsō leit sō dir.
 leider nū enmuge wir
 ime ze keinen staten komen. 505
 got der hāt in uns benomen:
 het ez iemen anders getān,
 der müese unsern fluoch hān.'
 Alsus gesweigēten sī sī dō.
 die naht beleip sī unfrō 510
 und morne allen den tac.
 swes iemen anders pflac,
 diz enkam von ir herzen nie
 unz man des andern nahtes gie
 slāfen nāch gewonheit. 515
 dō sī sich hete geleit
 an ir alte bettestat,
 sī bereite aber ein bat
 mit weinenden ougen:
 wan sī truoc tougen 520
 nāhe in ir gemüete
 die aller meisten güete
 die ich von kinde ie vernam.
 welch kint getete ouch ie alsam?
 des einen sī sich gar verwac, 525
 gelebetē sī morne den tac,
 daz sī benamen ir leben
 umbe ir herren wolte geben.
 Von dem gedanke wart sī dō
 vil ringes muotes unde frō, 530
 und hete deheine sorge mē,
 wan ein vorhtē diu tete ir wē,
 sō sīz ir herren sagte,
 daz er dar an verzagte,
 und swenne sīz in allen drin 535
 getæte kunt, daz sī an in
 der gehenge niht enfunde
 daz mans ir iht gunde.
 Des wart sō grōz ir ungehabe
 daz ir muoter dar abe 540
 unde ir vater wart erwahrt
 als ouch an der vordern naht.
 sī rihten sich ūf zuo ir
 und sprächen 'sich, waz wirret dir?
 dū bist vil alwære 545
 daz du dich sō manege swære
 von solher klage hāst an genomen
 der niemen mac zeim ende komen.
 war umbē lāstu uns niht slāfen?'
 sus begunden sī sī strāfen. 550
 waz ir diu klage töhte,
 die niemen doch enmöhte
 verenden noch gebüezen?
 sus wānden sī die süezen
 gesweigen an der selben stunt: 555
 dō was ir wille in vil unkunt.
 Sus antwurte in diu maget.
 'als uns mīn herre hāt gesaget,
 sō mac man in vil wol ernern. 560
 zewære, ir welt mirz danne wern,
 sō bin ich ze der arzenie guot.
 ich bin ein maget und hān den muot,
 ē ich in sihe verderben,
 ich wil ē für in sterben.'
 Von dirre rede wurden dō 565
 trūric unde unfrō
 beide muoter unde vater.
 sīne tohter die bat er

daz sī die rede lieze
 und ir herren gehieze 570
 daz sī geleisten möhte,
 wand ir diz niht entöhte.
 Er sprach 'tochter, du bist ein kint
 und dine triuwe die sint
 ze grōz an disen dingen. 575
 du enmaht es niht für bringen
 als dū uns hie hāst verjehen.
 dū hāst des tōdes niht gesehen.
 swenn ez dir kumet ūf die frist
 daz des dehein rāt ist, 580
 dū enmüezest sterben,
 und möhtest dūz erwerben,
 dū lebetest gerner dannoch:
 wan dun kæme nie in leider loch.
 dā von tuo zuo dīnen munt: 585
 und wirstū für dise stunt
 der rede iemer mēre lūt,
 ez gāt dir ūf dīne hūt.'
 Alsus sō wānde er sī dō
 bēdiu mit bete und mit drō 590
 gesweigen: dō enmohter.
 sus antwurt ime sīn tochter.
 'Vater mīn, swie tump ich sī,
 mir wonet iedoch diu witze bī
 daz ich von sage wol die nōt 595
 erkenne daz des lībes tōt
 ist starc unde strenge.
 swer ouch danne die lenge
 mit arbeiten leben sol,
 dem ist iedoch niht ze wol. 600
 wan swenne er hie geringet
 und ūf sīn alter bringet
 den līp mit michelre nōt,
 sō muoz er līden doch den tōt.
 ist ime diu sēle danne verlorn, 605
 sō wære er bezzer ungeborn.
 ez ist mir komen ūf daz zil,
 des ich got iemer loben wil,
 daz ich den jungen līp mac geben
 umbē daz ewige leben. 610
 nū sult ir mirz niht leiden.
 ich wil mir unde iu beiden
 vil harte wol mite varn.
 ich mag iuch eine wol bewarn
 vor schaden und vor leide, 615
 als ich iu nū bescheide.
 ir hānt ēre unde guot:
 daz meinet mīnes herren muot;
 wan er iu leit nie gesprach
 und ouch daz guot nie abe gebrach. 620
 die wīle daz er leben sol
 sō stēt iuwer sache wol:
 und lāze wir den sterben,
 sō müezen wir verderben.
 den wil ich uns fristen 625
 mit alsō schoenen listen
 dā mite wir alle sīn genesen.
 nū gunnet mirs, wan ez muoz wesen.'
 Diu muoter weinende sprach,
 dō sī der tochter ernst ersach, 630
 'gedenke, tochter, liebez kint,
 wie grōz die arbeite sint
 die ich durch dich erliten hān,
 und lā mich bezzern lōn enpfān
 dan ich dich høre sprechen. 635
 dū wilt mīn herze brechen.
 senfte mir der rede ein teil.
 jā wiltū allez dīn heil
 an uns verwürken wider got.
wan gedenkest dū an sīn gebot? 640
 jā gebōt er unde bat er
 daz man muoter unde vater
 minne und ēre biete,

und geheizet daz ze miete
 daz der sēle rāt werde 645
 und lanclīp ūf der erde.
 dū gihst, dū wellest dīn leben
 umb unser beider frōude geben:
 dū wilt uns beiden
 daz leben vaste leiden. 650
 daz dīn vater unde ich
 gerne leben, daz ist durch dich.
 waz solte uns līp unde guot, a
 waz solte uns werltlich muot, b
 swenne wir dīn enbæren? c
 dune d
 105 jā soltū, liebiu tohter mīn,
 unser beider frōude sīn,
 gar unsers libes wūnne, 655
 ein bluome in dīme künne,
 unsers alters ein stap.
 und lāstū uns über dīn grap
 gestēn von dīnen schulden,
 dū muost von gotes hulden 660
 iemer sīn gescheiden:
 daz koufest an uns beiden.
 'wiltu uns tohter wesen guot, a
 sō soltū rede und den muot b
 durch unsers herren hulde lān, c
 die ich von dir vernomen hān.' d
 Si sprach 'muoter, ich getrūwe dir
 und mīnem vater her ze mir
 aller der genāden wol 665
 der vater unde muoter sol
 leisten ir kinde,
 als ich ez wol bevinde
 an iu allertegelich.
 von iu wern gnāden hān ich 670
 die sēle und einen schōenen līp.
 mich lobet man unde wīp,
 und alle die mich sehende sint,
 ich sī daz schōeneste kint
 daz sī zir lebene haben gesehen. 675
 wem soll ich der genāden jehen
 niuwan iu zwein nāch gote?
 des sol ich ze iuwerm gebote
 iemer vil gerne stān:
 wie michel reht ich des hān! 680
 muoter, sæligez wīp,
 sīt ich nū sēle unde līp
 von iu wern genāden hān,
 106 sō lāntz an iu wern hulden stān 685
 daz ich ouch die beide
 von dem tiuvel scheidē
 und mich gote mūeze geben.
 jā ist dirre werlte leben
 niuwan der sēle verlust.
 ouch hāt mich werltlich gelust 690
 unz her noch niht berūeret,
 der hin zer helle fūeret.
 nū wil ich gote genāde sagen
 daz er in mīnen jungen tagen
 mir die sinne hāt gegeben 695
 daz ich ūf diz brōede leben
 ahte harte kleine.
 ich wil mich alsus reine
 antwūrten in gotes gewalt.
 ich fürhte, solt ich werden alt, 700
 daz mich der werlte sūeze
 zuhte under fūeze,
 als sī vil manegen hāt gezogen
 den ouch ir sūeze hāt betrogen:
 sō wūrde ich lihte gote entsaget. 705
 gote mūeze ez sīn geklaget
 daz ich unz morne leben sol:
 mir behaget diu werlt niht sō wol.
 ir meiste liep ist herzeleit
 (daz sī iu für wār geseit), 710

ir süezer lôn ein bitter nôt,
 ir langleben ein gæher tôt.
 wir hân niht gewisses mē
 wan hiute wol und morne wē
 und ie ze jungest der tôt. 715
 daz ist ein jæmerlichiu nôt.
 ez enschirmet geburt noch guot,
 schœne, sterke, höher muot,
 107 ez enfrumt tugent noch ēre
 für den tôt niht mēre 720
 dann ungeburt und untugent.
 unser leben und unser jugent
 ist ein nebel unde ein stoup,
 unser stæte bibent als ein loup.
 er ist ein vil verschaffen gouch 725
 der gerne in sich vazzt den rouch,
 ez sī wip oder man,
 der diz niht wol bedenken kan
 und ouch der werlt nâch folgende ist.
 wan uns ist über den fûlen mist 730
 der pfeller hie gespreitet:
 swen nû der blic verleitet,
 der ist zuo der hellē geborn
 unde enhât niht mē verlorn
 wan beidiu sēle unde lip. 735
 nu gedenkent, sæligez wip,
 müeterlicher triuwe
 und senftent iuwer riuwe
 die ir dâ habent umbe mich:
 so bedenket ouch der vater sich. 740
 ich weiz wol daz er mir heiles gan.
 er ist ein alsô biderber man
 daz er erkennet wol daz ir
 unlange doch mit mir
 iuwer fröude mügent hân, 745
 ob ich joch lebende bestân.
 belibe ich âne man bī iu
 zwei jâr oder driu,
 sô ist mîn herre lihte tôt,
 und kument in sô grôze nôt 750
 vil lihte von armuot
 daz ir mir alsolhez guot
 zeinem man niht mugent geben,
 108 ich enmüeze also swache leben
 daz ich iu lieber wære tôt. 755
 nu verswige wir aber der nôt,
 daz uns niht enwerre
 und uns mîn lieber herre
 were und alsô lange lebe
 unz daz man mich zeim manne gebe 760
 der rîche sī unde wert:
 sô ist geschehen des ir dâ gert
 und wænent mir sī wol geschehen.
 anders hât mir mîn muot verjehen.
 wirt er mir lieb, daz ist ein nôt: 765
 wirt er mir leit, daz ist der tôt.
 wan sô hân ich iemer leit
 und bin mit ganzer arbeit
 gescheiden von gemache
 mit maneger hande sache 770
 diu den wîben wirret
 und sī ze fröuden irret.
 nû setzt mich in den vollen rât
 der dâ niemer zergât.
 mîn gert ein frier bûman 775
 dem ich wol mînes lîbes gan.
 zwære, dem sult ir mich geben,
 sô ist geschaffet wol mîn leben.
 im gêt sîn pfluoc harte wol,
 sîn hof ist alles râtes vol, 780
 da enstirbet ros noch daz rint,
 da enmüent diu weinenden kint,
 da enist ze heiz noch ze kalt,
 dâ wirt von jâren niemen alt,
 der alte wirt junger, 785

da enist frost noch hunger,
 da enist deheiner slahte leit,
 da ist ganziu fröude ān arbeit.
 109 ze dem wil ich mich ziehen
 und solhen bū fliehen 790
 den daz fiur und der hagel sleht
 und der wāc abe tweht,
 mit dem man ringet unde ie ranc.
 swaz man daz jār also lanc
 dar ūf gearbeiten mac, 795
 daz verliuset schiere ein halber tac.
 den bū den wil ich lāzen:
 er sī von mir verwāzen.
 ir minnent mich: deist billich.
 nū sihe ich gerne daz mich 800
 iuwer minne iht unminne.
 ob ir iuch rehter sinne
 an mir verstān kunnent
 und ob ir mir gunnent
 beide guotes unde ēren, 805
 sō lāzet mich kēren
 ze unserm herren Jēsū Krist,
 des gnāde alsō stæte ist
 daz sī niemer zergāt,
 unde ouch zuo mir armen hāt 810
 alsō grōze minne
 als zener küniginne.
 ich sol von mīnen schulden
 ūz iuwers hulden
 niemer komen, wil ez got. 815
 ez ist gewisse sīn gebot
 daz ich iu sī undertān,
 wan ich den līp von iu hān:
 daz leist ich āne riuwe.
 ouch sol ich māne triuwe 820
 an mir selber niht brechen.
 ich hōrte ie daz sprechen,
 swer den andern frōuwet sō
 daz er selbe wirt unfrō,
 110 und swer den andern krōenet 825
 und sich selben hōenet,
 der triuwen sī ze vil.
 wie gerne ich iu des volgen wil
 daz ich iu triuwe leiste,
 mir selber doch die meiste. 830
 welt ir mir wenden mīn heil,
 sō lāz ich iuch ein teil
 ē nāch mir geweinen,
 ich enwelle mir erscheinen
 wes ich mir selber schuldic bin. 835
 ich wil iemer dā hin
 da ich volle fröude vinde.
 ir hānt doch mē kinde:
 diu lānt iuwer fröude sīn
 und getrōestent ir iuch mīn. 840
 wan mir mac daz nieman erwern,
 zwāre, ich enwelle ernern
 mīnen herren unde mich.
 muoter, jā hōrte ich dich
 klagen unde sprechen ē, 845
 ez tæte dime herzen wē,
 soltest dū ob mīme grabe stān.
 des wirst du harte wol erlān:
 dū stāst ob mīme grabe niht.
 wan dā der tōt geschiht, 850
 daz enlāt dich niemen sehen:
 ez sol ze Sālerne geschehen.
 dā sol uns viere der tōt a
 lōesēen von aller slahte nōt. b
 des tōdes des genese wir,
 und ich doch verre baz dan ir.'
 Dō sī daz kint dō sāhen 855
 ze dem tōde sō gāhen,
 111 und ez sō wīslīchen sprach
 unde menschlich reht zerbrach,

si begunden ahten under in
 daz die wîsheit und den sin 860
 niemer erzeigen kunde
 dehein zunge in kindes munde.
 sî jâhen daz der heiliggeist
 der rede wære ir volleist,
 der ouch sante Niklauses pflac 865
 dô er in der wagen lac
 und in die wîsheit lërte
 daz er ze gote kërte
 sîne kintliche güete:
 und bedähten sich in ir gemüete 870
 daz sî niht enwolden
 sî wenden noch ensolden
 des sî sich hete an genomen:
 der wille sî ir von gote komen.
 von jâmer erkalte in der lip, 875
 dô der meiger und sîn wîp
 an dem bette sâzen
 und vil gar vergâzen
 durch des kindes minne
 der zungen und der sinne 880
 sâ ze der selben stunde.
 ir enwederz enkunde
 einic wort gesprechen.
 daz gegihtē begunde brechen
 die muoter von leide. 885
 sus gesâzen sî beide
 riuwic unde unfrō
 unz sî sich bedähten dô
 waz in ir trüren töhte:
 sō man ir doch niht enmöhte 890
 benemen ir willen unde ir muot,
 sō enwære in niht alsō guot
 sō daz sî irs wol gunden,
 wan sî doch niht enkunden
 ir niemer werden âne baz; 895
 enpfiegen sî der rede haz,
 ez möhte in umbe ir herren
 vil harte wol gewerren,
 und verviengen anders niht dâ mite.
 mit vil willeclîchem site 900
 sprâchen sî beide dô
 daz sî der rede wâren frō.
 Des fröute sich diu reine maget.
 dô ez vil kûme was getaget
 dô gie sî dâ ir herre slief. 905
 sîn trütgemahede ime rief,
 sî sprach 'herre, slâfent ir?'
 'nein ich, gemahede, sage mir,
 wie bistû hiute alsō fruo?'
 'herre, dâ twinget mich derzuo 910
 der jâmer iuwerr siecheit.'
 er sprach 'gemahede, daz ist dir leit:
 daz erzeigest du an mir wol,
 als ez dir got vergelten sol.
 nune mag es dehein rât sîn.' 915
 'entriuwen, lieber herre mîn,
 iuwer wirt vil guot rât.
 sît ez alsus umbe iuch stât
 daz man iu gehelfen mac,
 ichn gesûme iuch niemer tac. 920
 herre, ir hânt uns doch gesaget,
 ob ir hetent eine maget
 diu gerne den töt durch iuch lite,
 dâ soltent ir genesen mite.
 diu wil ich weizgot selbe sîn: 925
 iuwer leben ist nützer dan daz mîn.'

112
 113
 Dō gnâdete ir der herre
 des willen harte verre.
 und ervolleten im diu ougen
 von jâmer alsō tougen. 930
 er sprach 'gemahede, ja ist der töt
 iedoch niht ein senftiu nôt,
 als dû dir lihte hâst gedäht.

du hāst mich des wol innen brāht,
 möhtestū, dū hülfest mir. 935
 des genüegeṭ mich wol von dir.
 ich erkenne dīnen süezen muot:
 dīn wille ist reine unde guot.
 ichn sol ouch niht mē von dir gern.
 dū maht mich des niht wol gewern 940
 daz dū dā gesprochen hāst.
 die triuwe die du an mir begāst,
 die sol dir vergelten got.
 ditz wære der lantliute spot,
 swaz ich mich für dise stunde 945
 arzenien underwunde,
 und mich doch niht vervienge
 wan als ez doch ergienge.
 gemahele, dū tuost als diu kint
 diu dā gæhes muotes sint: 950
 swaz den kumet in den muot,
 ez sī übel oder guot,
 dar zuo ist in allen gāch,
 und geriuweṭ sī sēre dar nāch.
 gemahele, alsō tuost ouch dū. 955
 der rede ist dir ze muote nū:
 der d e von dir nemen wolte,
 sō manz danne enden solte,
 so geriuwez dich vil lihte doch. '
 und daz sī sich ein teil noch 960
 baz bedæhte des bat er.
 114 er sprach 'dīn muoter und dīn vater
 die enmugen dīn niht wol enbern.
 ich sol ouch niht ir leides gern
 die mir ie gnāde tāten. 965
 swaz sī dir beide rāten,
 liebe gemahele, daz tuo. '
 hie mite lachete er dar zuo,
 wan er lützel sich versach
 daz doch sider dō geschach. 970
 Sus sprach er zuo der guoter.
 der vater und diu muoter
 sprāchen 'lieber herre,
 ir hānt uns vil verre
 geliebet und geēret: 975
 daz enwære niht wol bekēret,
 wir engültenz iu mit guote.
 unser tohter ist ze muote
 daz sī den tōt durch iuch dol:
 des gunne wir ir harte wol. 980
 ez ist hiute der dritte tac
 daz sī uns allez ane lac
 daz wir ir sīn gunden:
 nū hāt siz an uns funden.
 nū lāze iuch got mit ir genesen: 985
 wir wellen ir durch iuch entwesen. '
 Do im sīn gemahele dō bōt
 für sīnen siechtuom ir tōt
 und man ir ernest ersach,
 dō wart dō michel ungemach 990
 und jæmerlich gebærde.
 manc mislīchiu beswærde
 huop sich dō under in,
 zwischē dem herren unde in drin. 995
 ir vater unde ir muoter die
 erhuoben michel weinen hie:
 115 des weinens tet in michel nōt
 umb ir vil lieben kindes tōt.
 nū begunde ouch der herre
 gedenken alsō verre 1000
 an des kindes triuwe,
 und begreif in ein riuwe,
 daz er sēre weinen began,
 und zwīvelte vaste dran
 weder ez bezzer getān 1005
 möhte sīn oder verlān.
 von vorhten weinte ouch diu maget:
 sī wānde er wære dran verzaget.

	sus wārens alle unfrō. sī gerten keines dankes dō.	1010
	Ze jungest dō bedāhte sich ir herre, der arme Heinrich, und begunde sagen in grōze gnāde allen drin der triuwen und des guotes	1015
	(diu maget wart rīches muotes daz ers gevolgete gerne), und bereitē sich ze Sālerne sō er schiereste mohte. swaz ouch der megede tohte,	1020
	daz wart vil schiere bereit: schœniu pfert und rīchiu kleit, diu sī getruoc nie vor der zīt: hermin unde samīt, den besten zobel den man vant,	1025
	daz was der megede gewarit. Nū wer möhte volgesagen die herzeriuwe und daz klagen, der muoter grimmigez leit und ouch des vater arbeit?	1030
116	eꝛ wære wol under in beiden ein jæmerliūchez scheiden, dō sī ir liebez kint von in gefrumten sō gesundez hin niemer mē ze sehenne in den tōt,	1035
	wan daz in senftet ir nōt diu reine gotes güete, von der doch daz gemüete ouch dem jungen kinde quam daz eꝛ den tōt gerne nam.	1040
	eꝛ was āne ir rāt kōmen: dā von wart von ir herzen genomen alliu klage und swære, wan eꝛ anders wunder wære daz in ir herze niht zerbrach.	1045
	ze liebe wart ir ungemach, daz sī dar nāch deheine nōt liten umbe ir Kindes tōt.	

IV WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE.

The exact dates of his birth and death are unknown. His chief poems were written between the years 1187 and 1230.

The best edition of his works is: Walther von der Vogelweide, herausgegeben und erklärt von W. Wilmanns, Halle, 1883 (2nd edit.).

1.

	Ir sult sprechen: 'willekomen!' der iu mære bringet, daz bin ich. Alleꝛ daz ir habt vernomen, daz ist gar ein wint: nū frāget mich.	
	Ich wil aber miete: wirt mīn lōn iht guot, sō sage ich iu vil lihte, daz in sanfte tuot. seht, waz man mir ēren biete.	5
117	Ich wil tiuschen frouwen sagen solhiu mære, daz si destē baz	10
	Al der werlte suln behagen: āne grōze miete tuon ich daz. Waz wold' ich ze lōne? si sint mir ze hēr; sō bin ich gefüege und bite si nihtes mēr wan daz si mich grüezen schōne.	15
	Ich hān lande vil gesehen unde nam der besten gerne war: Übel müeze mir geschehen, künde ich ie mīn herze bringen dar, Daz im wol gevallen	20

wolde fremeder site.
nū waz hülfe mich, ob ich unrehte strite?
tiuschiu zuht gāt vor in allen.

25

Von der Elbe unz an den Rīn
und her wider unz an Ungerlant
Mügen wol die besten sīn,
die ich in der werlte hān erkant.

Kan ich rehte schouwen
guot gelāz und līp, 30
sam mir got, sō swüere ich wol, daz hie diu wīp
bezzer sint danne ander frouwen.

Tiusche man sint wol gezogen,
rehte als engel sint diu wīp getān.

Swer si schiltet, derst betrogen: 35
ich enkan sīn anders niht verstān.

Tugent und reine minne,
swer die suochen wil,
der sol komen in unser lant: da ist wünne vil:
lange müeze ich leben dar inne! 40

118

2.

Owē war sint verschwunden alliu mīniu jār!
ist mir mīn leben getroumet oder ist ez wār?
daz ich ie wānde, daz iht wære, was daz iht?
dar nāch hān ich geslāfen und enweiz es niht.

Nū bin ich erwachet, und ist mir unbekant, 45
daz mir hie vor was kündic als mīn ander hant.

liut unde lant, dā ich von kinde bin erzogen,
die sint mir fremde worden, reht' als ez sī gelogen:

Die mīne gespilen wāren, die sint träge und alt;
bereitet ist daz velt, verhouwen ist der walt: 50

wan daz daz wazzer fliuzeit, als ez wīlent flōz,
für wār ich wānde mīn ungelücke würde grōz.
mich grüezet maneger träge, der mich bekande ē wol.
diu werlt ist allenthalben ungenāden vol.

als ich gedenke an manegen wūnneclīchen tac, 55
die sint mir enpfallen gar als in daz mer ein slac,
iemer mēre owē!

Owē wie jæmerliche junge liute tuont!
den vil unriuweclīche ir gemüete stuont,

die kunnen niuwan sorgen: owē wie tuont si sō? 60
swar ich zer werlte kēre, dā ist nieman frō:

Tanzen unde singen zergāt mit sorgen gar.
nie kristenman gesach sō jæmerlichiu jār.

nū merket, wie den frouwen ir gebende stāt;
die stolzen ritter tragent dörperliche wāt. 65

Uns sint unsenfte brieve her von Rōme komen,
uns ist erlobet trüren und frōude gar benomen.

daz müet mich inneclīchen (wir lebten ē vil wol),
daz ich nū für mīn lachen weinen kiesen sol.

diu wilden vogellīn betrüebet unser klage: 70
waz wonders ist, ob ich dā von vil gar verzage?

119

waz spriche ich tumber man durch mīnen bösen zorn?
swer dirre wünne volget, der hāt jene dort verlorn
iemer mēre, owē!

Owē wie uns mit süezen dingen ist vergeben! 75
ich sihe die gallen mitten in dem honege sweben.

diu werlt ist ūzen schōene, wīz, grūen' unde rōt
und innen swarzer varwe, vīnster sam der tōt.

Swen si nū habe verleitet, der schouwe sīnen trōst:
er wirt mit swacher buoze grōzer sūnde erlōst. 80

dar an gedenket, ritter! ez ist iuwer dīnc;
ir traget die liehten helme und manegen herten rīnc,

Dar zuo die vesten schilte und diu gewihten swert.
wolte got, wær ich der sigenünfte wert,

sō wolte ich nōtic man verdienen rīchen solt. 85
joch meine ich niht die huoben noch der hēren golt:

ich wolte selbe krōne ēweclīchen tragen;
die möhte ein soldenære mit sīme sper bejagen.

mōht ich die lieben reise gevaren über sē,
sō wolte ich denne singen 'wol' und niemer mēre 90

'owē,'

niemer mēre 'owē!'

3.

Dō der sumer komen was
und die bluomen durch daz gras
wünneclīche entsprungen,
aldā die vogelesungen, 95
dār kom ich gegangen
an einen anger langen,
dā ein lüter brunne entspranc;
vor dem walde was sīn ganc,
dā diu nahtegale sanc. 100

120 Bī dem brunnen stuont ein boum,
dā gesach ich einen troum.
ich was zuo dem brunnen
gegangen von der sunnen,
daz diu linde mære 105
den küelen schaten bære.
bī dem brunnen ich gesaz:
mīner swære ich gar vergaz,
schiere entslief ich umbe daz. 110

Dō bedūhte mich zehant,
wie mir dienten elliu lant,
wie mīn sēle wære
ze himel āne swære
und der līp hie solte
gebären swie er wolte. 115
dā enwas mir niht ze wē.
got der waldes, swie'z ergē:
schœner troum enwart nie mē.

Gerne sliefe ich iemer dā,
wan ein unsæligiu krā, 120
diu begonde schrīen.
daz alle krā gedien
alse ich in des gūnne!
si nam mir michel wunne.
von ir schrīenne ich erschrac: 125
wan daz dā niht steines lac,
sō wær' ez ir suontac.

121 Wan ein wunderaltez wīp
diu getrōste mir den līp.
die begonde ich eiden. 130
nū hāt si mir bescheiden
waz der troum bediute.
daz merken wīse liute;
zwēne und einer daz sint drī;
dannoch seite si mir dā bī, 135
daz mīn dūme ein vinger sī.

4.

Ich saz ūf eime steine
und dahte bein mit beine;
dar ūf satzt ich den ellenbogen;
ich hete in mīne hant gesmogen 140
daz kinne und ein mīn wange:
dō dāhte ich mir vil ange,
wie man zer werlte solte leben.
deheinen rāt kond ich gegeben,
wie man driu dīnc erwürbe, 145
der keinez niht verdürbe.
diu zwei sint ēre und varnde guot,
daz dicke einander schaden tuot;
daz dritte ist gotes hulde,
der zweier übergulde. 150
die wolte ich gerne in einen schrīn;
jā leider des enmac niht sīn,
daz guot und werltlich ēre
und gotes hulde mēre
zesamene in ein herze komen. 155
stīg' unde wege sint in benomen:

untriuwe is in der sāze,
gewalt vert ūf der strāze,
fride unde reht sint sēre wunt.
diu driu enhabent geleites niht, 160
diu zwei enwerden ē gesunt.

5.

122 Ich hōrte ein wazzer diezen
und sach die vische fliezen;
ich sach swaz in der werlte was,
velt unde walt, loup rōr und gras; 165
swaz kriuchet unde fliuget
und bein zer erden biuget,
daz sach ich unde sage iu daz:
der keinez lebet āne haz.
daz wilt und daz gewürme 170
die strītent starke stürme,
sam tuont die vogel under in;
wan daz sie habent einen sin:
sie diuhten sich ze nihte,
sie einschüefen starc gerihte: 175
sie kiesent künege unde reht,
sie setzent hērrēn unde kneht.
sō wē dir, tiuschiu zunge,
wie stēt dīn ordenunge,
daz nū diu mucke ir künic hāt 180
und daz dīn ēre alsō zergāt!
bekērā dich, bekēre!
die zīrken sint ze hēre,
die armen künege dringent dich:
Philippe setze en weisen ūf und heiz
sie treten hinder sich!

6.

123 Ich sach mit mīnen ougen
man unde wibe tougen,
dā ich gehōrte und gesach
swaz iemen tet, swaz iemen sprach.
ze Rōme hōrte ich liegen 190
und zwēne künege triegen.
dā von huop sich der meiste strīt,
der ē was oder iemer sīt,
daz sich begonden zweien
die pfaffen unde leien. 195
daz was ein nōt vor aller nōt:
līp unde sēle lac dā tōt,
die pfaffen striten sēre:
doch wart der leien mēre.
diu swert sie legeten dernider 200
und griffen zuo der stōle wider:
sie bienen die sie wolten
und niuwet den sie solten.
dō stōrte man diu goteshūs.
ich hōrte verre in einer klūs 205
vil michel ungebære:
dā weinde ein klōsenære,
er klagete gote sīniu leit:
'ōwē, der bābest ist ze junc: hilf, hērrē,
dīner Kristenheit!'

7.

Diu krōne ist elter dan der künec Philippes sī: 210
dā muget ir alle schouwen wol ein wunder bī,
wie s' ime der smit sō ebene habe gemacht.
sīn keiserlichez houbet zimt ir alsō wol,
daz sie ze rehte nieman guoter scheiden sol.
ir dwederez daz ander niht enswachet. 215
sie liuhtent beide ein ander an,
daz edele gesteine wider den jungen man:
die ougenweide sehent die fürsten gerne.
swer nū des rīches irre gē,
der schouwe, wem der wise ob sīme nacke 220
stē:

der stein ist aller fürsten leitesterne.

8.

Mir ist verspart der sælden tor:
dā stēn ich als ein wise vor,
mich hilfet niht swaz ich dar an geklopfe.
wie möhte ein wunder grøezer sīn? 225
ez regent beidenthalben mīn,
daz mir des alles niht enwirt ein tropfe.
des fürsten milte ūz Ōsterrīche
freut dem süezen regen gelīche
124 beidiu liute und ouch daz lant. 230
er ist ein schøene wol gezieret heide,
dar abe man bluomen brichet wunder:
und bræche mir ein blat dar under
diu sīn vil milte rīchiu hant,
sō möhte ich loben die süezen ougenweide. 235
hie bī sī er an mich gemant.

9.

Ich hān mīn lēhen, al die werlt! ich hān mīn lēhen!
nū enfürhte ich niht den hornunc an die zēhen
und wil alle böese hērrēn deste minre vlēhen.
der edel künec, der milte künec hāt mich berāten, 240
daz ich den sumer luft und in dem winter hitze hān.
mīn' nāhgebūren dunke ich verre baz getān:
sie sehent mich niht mēr an in butzen wīs, alsō sie tāten.
ich bin ze lange arm gewesen ān' mīnen danc.
ich was sō volle scheltens, daz mīn ātem stanc. 245
daz hāt der künec gemachet reine und dar zuo mīnen
sanc.

10.

Ōwē hovelīchez singen,
daz dich ungefüege dōene
solten ie ze hove verdringen!
daz sie schiere got gehōene! 250
ōwē, daz dīn wirde alsō gelīget,
des sint alle dīne friunde unfrō.
daz muoz eht sō sīn, nū sī alsō:
frō Unfuoge, ir habt gesiget. 255

125 Der uns freude wider bræhte,
diu reht und gefüege wære,
hei wie wol man des gedæhte,
swā man von im seite mære!
ez wær' ein vil hovelīcher muot,
des ich iemer gerne wūnschen sol. 260
frouwen unde hērrēn zæme ez wol:
ōwē daz ez nieman tuot!

Die daz rehte singen stœrent,
der ist ungelīche mēre
danne die ez gerne hœrent. 265
des volg' ich der alten lēre:
ich enwil niht werben ze der mül;
dā der stein sō riuschend' umbe gāt
und daz rat sō manegē unwise hāt,
merket wer dā harpfen sül! 270

Die sō frevellichen schallent,
der muoz ich vor zorne lachen,
daz s' in selben wol gevallent
mit als ungefüegen sachen.
die tuont sam die frösche in eime 275
sē,
den ir schrīen alsō wol behaget,
daz diu nahtegal dā von verzaget,
sō si gerne sunge mē.

Der unfuoge swīgen hieze,
waz man noch von freuden sunge, 280
und sie abe den bürgen stieze,

daz si dā die frōn iht twunge!
wurden ir die grōzen hōve benomen,
daz wær' allez nāch dem willen mīn:
bīen gebūren lieze ich sie wol sīn, 285
dānnen ist s' ouch here komen.

11.

126 Der rīfe tet den kleinen vogelen wē,
daz sie niht ensungen.
nū hōrte ich s'aber wūnneclīche als ē:
nū ist diu heide entsprungen. 290
dā sach ich bluomen strīten wider den klē,
weder ir lenger wære.
mīner frouwen seite ich disiu mære.

Uns hāt der winter kalt und ander nōt
vil getān ze leide. 295
ich wānde, daz ich iemer bluomen rōt
sæhe an grüener heide.
joch schāte ez guoten liuten, wære ich tōt,
die nāch freuden rungen
und ie gerne tanzten unde sprungen. 300

Versūmde ich disen wūnneclīchen tac,
sō wær' ich verwāzen
und wære an freude ein angestlicher slac:
dennoch müese ich lāzen
al mīne freude, der ich wīlent pflac. 305
got gesegen' iuch alle:
wünschet noch, daz mir ein heil gevalle.

12.

127 Wīp muoz ēt iemer sīn der wībe hōhste name
und tiuret baz dan frouwe, als ich'z erkenne.
swā nū deheiniu sī, diu sich ir wīpheit 310
schame,
diu merke disen sanc und kiese denne.
under frouwen sint unwīp,
under wīben sint sie tiure:
wībes name und wībes līp
die sint beide vil gehiure. 315
swie'z umb' alle frouwen var,
wīp sint alle frouwen gar.
zwīvellop daz hōnet,
als under wīlen frouwe: wīp dēst ein name der
s'alle krōnet.

13.

Sō die bluomen ūz dem grase dringent, 320
same sie lachen gegen der spileden sunnen,
in einem meien an dem morgen fruo,
und diu kleinen vogellīn wol singent
in ir besten wīse die sie kunnen,
waz wūnne mac sich dā genōzen zuo? 325
ez ist wol halb ein himelrīche.
suln wir sprechen, waz sich deme gelīche,
sō sage ich, waz mir dicke baz
in mīnen ougen hāt getān,
und tæte ouch noch, gesæhe ich daz. 330

Swā ein edeliu schōene frouwe reine
wol gekleidet unde wol gebunden
durch kurzewīle zuo vil liuten gāt,
hovelīchen hōchgemuot, niht eine,
umbe sehendē ein wēnic under stunden: 335
alsam der sunne gegen den sternen stāt:
der meie bringe uns al sīn wunder,
waz ist dā sō wūnneclīches under
als ir vil minneclīcher līp?
wir lāzen alle bluomen stān, 340
und kapfen an daz werde wīp.

Nū wol dan, welt ir die wārheit schouwen,

gēn wir zuo des meien hōchgezīte!
 der ist mit aller sīner krefte komen. 345
 seht an in und seht an werde frouwen,
 wedereꝛ daz ander überstrīte,
 daz bezzer spil ob ich daz habe genomen.
 ōwē der mich dā welen hieze,
 deich daz eine durch daz ander lieze,
 wie rehte schiere ich danne küre! 350
 hēr Meie, ir müeset merze sīn,
 ē ich mīne frouwen dā verlüre.

128

14.

Swie wol der heide ir manicvaltiu varwe stāt,
 sō wil ich doch dem walde jehen,
 daz er vil mēre wūneclīcher dinge hāt. 355
 noch ist dem velde baz geschehen.
 sō wol dir, sumer, sus getāner emꝛezeit!
 sumer, daz ich iemer lobe dīne tage,
 mīn trōst, sō trōeste ouch mīne klage:
 ich sage dir, waꝛ mir wirret: 360
 diu mir ist liep, der bin ich leit.

Ich mac der guoten niht vergezzen noch ensol,
 diu mir sō vil gedanke nimet.
 die wīle ich singe, wil ich vinden iemer wol
 ein niuwe lop, daz ir gezimet. 365
 nū habe ir diz für guot (sō lobe ich danne mē):
 eꝛ tuot in den ougen wol, daz man sie siht,
 und daz man ir vil tugende giht,
 daz tuot wol in den ōren.
 sō wol ir des! sō wē mir, wē! 370

15.

In einen zwīvellīchen wān
 was ich gesezzen und gedāhte,
 ich wolte von ir dienste gān,
 wan daz ein trōst mich wider brāhte.
 trōst mag eꝛ rehte niht geheizen, ouwē des! 375
 eꝛ ist vil kūme ein kleinez trōstelīn,
 sō kleine, swenne ich'z iu gesage, ir spottet mīn;
 doch frōwet sich lützel ieman, er enwizze wes.

Mich hāt ein halm gemachet frō:
 er giht, ich sūle genāde vinden. 380
 ich maꝛ daz selbe kleine strō,
 als ich hie vore sach von kinden.
 nū hōeret unde merket, ob si'z denne tuo:
 'si tuot, si entuot, si tuot, si entuot, si tuot.'
 swie dicke ich'z tete, sō was ie daz ende quot. 385
 daz trōestet mich: dā hōeret ouch geloube zuo.

129

16.

Nieman kan beherten
 kindes zuht mit gerten:
 den man z'ēren bringen mac,
 dem ist ein wort als ein slac. 390
 dem ist ein wort als ein slac,
 den man z'ēren bringen mac:
 kindes zuht mit gerten
 nieman kan beherten. 395

Hüetet iuwer zungen,
 daz zimt wol den jungen;
 stōz den rigel für die tür,
 lā kein böese wort dar für.
 lā kein böese wort dar für,
 stōz den rigel für die tür: 400
 daz zimt wol den jungen,
 hüetet iuwer zungen.

Hüetet iuwer ougen
 offenbāre und tougen:
 lāt sie quote site spehen 405

und die bösen übersehen;
und die bösen übersehen
lāt sie, guote site spehen:
offenbāre und tougen
hüetet iuwer ougen. 410

130 Hüetet iuwer ören,
oder ir sīt tōren:
lāt ir bösiu wort dar in,
daz gunēret iu den sin.
daz gunēret in den sin, 415
lāt ir bösiu wort dar in,
oder ir sīt tōren:
hüetet iuwer ören.

Hüetet wol der drīer
leider alze frīer: 420
zungen ougen ören sint
dicke schalchaft, z'ëren blint.
dicke schalchaft, z'ëren blint
zungen ougen ören sint:
leider alze frīer 425
hüetet wol der drīer.

17.

Junc man, in swelher aht dū bist,
ich wil dich lēren einen list:
dū lā dir niht ze wē sīn nāch dem guote:
lā dir'z ouch niht z'unmære sīn. 430
und volges dū der lēre mīn,
sō wis gewis, ez frumt dir an dem muote.
die rede wil ich dir baz bescheiden.
lāst dū dir'z ze sēre leiden,
zergāt ez so ist dīn freude tōt: 435
wilt aber dū daz guot ze sēre minnen,
dū maht verliesen sēle und ēre.
dā von sō volge mīner lēre:
leg' uf die wāge ein rehtez lōt
und wig ouch dar mit allen dīnen sinnen, 440
als ez diu māze eht ie gebōt.

131

18.

Die vāter hānt ir kint erzogen,
dar an sie beide sint betrogen:
sie brechent dicke Salomōnes lēre:
der sprichet, swer den besmen spar, 445
daz der den sun versūme gar:
des sint die ungebatten gar ān' ēre.
hie vor dō was diu werlt sō schœne,
nū ist sie worden alsō hœne.
des enwas niht wīlent ē: 450
die jungen hānt die alten sō verdrungen.
nū spottet alse dar der alten!
ez wirt iu selben noch behalten.
beitet unz iuwer jugent zergē:
swaz ir nū tuot, daz rechent iuwer jungen, 455
daz weiz ich wol und weiz noch mē.

19.

Wer zieret nū der ëren sal?
der jungen ritter zuht ist smal,
sō pflegent die knehte gar unhövescher dinge
mit Worten und mit werken ouch. 460
swer zühte hāt, der ist ir gouch.
nemt war, wie gar unfuoge für sich dringe!
hie vor dō berte man die jungen,
die dā pflāgen frecher zungen;
nū ist ez ir werdekeit: 465
sie schallent unde scheltent reine frouwen.
wē ir hiuten unde ir hāren,
die niht kunnen frō gebāren
sunder wībe herzeleit!
dā mac man sūnde bī der schande schouwen, 470

die maneger ūf sich selben leit.

132

20.

Swer āne vorhte, hēre got,
wil sprechen dīniu zehen gebot
und brichet diu, daz ist niht rehtiu minne.
dich heizet vater maneger vil: 475
swer mīn ze bruoder niht enwil,
der sprichet starkiu wort ūz krankem sinne.
wir wahsen ūz gelichem dinge:
spīse frumet uns, diu wirt ringe,
sō si durch den munt gevart. 480
wer kan den hēren von dem knehte scheiden
swa er ir gebeine blōzez fūnde,
und hāete er ir joch lebender kūnde,
sō gewürme daz fleisch verzert?
im dient kristen, juden unde heiden, 485
der elliu lebendiu wunder nert.

21.

Ōwē daz wīsheit unde tugent,
des mannes schoene noch sīn jugent
niht erben sol, sō ie der līp erstirbet!
daz mac wol klagen ein wīser man, 490
der sich des schaden versinnen kan.
Reinmār, waz guoter kunst an dir verdirbet!
dū solt von schulden iemer des geniezen,
daz dich des tages wolte nie verdriezen,
du'n sprāches ie den frouwen wol und guoten wībes 495
siten.
des suln sie iemer danken dīner zungen.
und hāetest niht wan eine rede gesungen:
'sō wol dir, wīp, wie reine ein nam!', dū hāetest an
gestriten
ir lobe, daz elliu wīp dir iemer gnāden solten biten.

133

22.

Dēs wār, Reinmār, dū riuwes mich 500
michels harter denne ich dich,
obe dū lebtes unde ich wære erstorben
ich wil'z bī mīnen triuwen sagen:
dich selben wil ich lützel klagen,
ich klage dīn edelen kunst, daz s'ist verdorben. 505
dū kundest al der werlte freude mēren,
sō du'z ze guoten dingen woltest kēren.
mich riuwet dīn wol redender munt und dīn vil sūezer
sanc,
daz der verdorben ist bī mīnen zīten.
daz dū niht eine wīle mohtest bīten! 510
sō leiste ich dir geselleschaft: mīn singen ist niht lanc.
dīn sēle mūeze wol gevart und habe dīn zunge danc.

V
REINMAR.

Reinmar, often called Reinmar der Alte, was by birth an Alsatian. He spent many years of his active life as Court poet at Vienna, where he was extremely popular. Next to his rival Walther von der Vogelweide he was the most prolific and important lyrical poet of his period, cp. ll. 487-512, pp. 132-3. He died some time during the first decade of the thirteenth century. See Burdach, *Reinmar der Alte und Walther von der Vogelweide*, Leipzig, 1880, and Bartsch, *Deutsche Liederdichter des zwölften his vierzehnten Jahrhunderts*, Stuttgart, 1879.

1

'Sī koment underwīlen her
die baz dā heime möhten sīn.
Ein ritter des ich lange ger,
bedāhte er baz den willen mīn,
sō wære er z'allen zīten hie, 5
als ich in gerne sāhe.
owē des, waz suochent die
die nīdent daz ob iemen guot

Mir ist geschehen daz ich niht bin
 langer vrō wan unz ich lebe. 10
 sī wundert wer mir schoenen sin
 und daz hōhgemüete gebe
 daz ich zer werlte niht getar
 ze rehte alsō gebären,
 nie genam ich vrowen war, 15
 ich wære in holt die mir ze māze
 wāren.

2

Ein rede der liute tuot mir wē:
 da enkan ich niht gedulteclichen zuo gebären.
 nu tuont si'z alle deste mē:
 sī frāgent mich ze vil von mīner frouwen jāren 20
 und sprechent welher tage sī sī,
 dur daz ich ir sō lange bin gewesen mit
 triuwen bī;
 sī jehent daz es möhte mich verdriezen.
 nu lā daz aller beste wīp
 ir zühtelōser vrāge mich geniezen. 25

3

Sī jehent, der sumer der sī hie,
 diu wunne diu sī komen
 und daz ich mich wol gehabe als ē.
 nu rātet unde sprechet wie:
 der tōt hāt mir benomen 30
 daz ich niemer überwinde mē.
 waz bedarf ich wunneclīcher zīt,
 sīt aller vrōuden hērre Liutpolt in der erde lit,
 den ich nie tac getrūren sach?
 ez hāt diu werlt an ime verlorn 35
 daz ir an manne nie
 sō jæmerlīcher schade geschach.

'Mir armen wībe was ze wol,
 dō ich gedāhte an in
 wie mīn heil an sīnem libe lac. 40
 daz ich des nū niht haben sol,
 des gāt mit sorgen hin
 swaz ich iemer mē geleben mac.
 mīner wunnen spiegel derst verlorn
 den ich mir hete ze sumerlīcher ougen weide 45
 erkorn,
 des muoz ich leider ænic sīn.
 dō man mir seite er wære tōt,
 zehant wiel mir daz bluot
 von herzen uf die sēle mīn. 50

Die frōide mir verboten hāt
 mīns lieben hērren tōt
 alsō deich ir mēr enberen sol.
 sīt des nu niht mac werden rāt,
 in ringe mit der nōt,
 daz mīn klagedez herze ist jāmers vol, 55
 diu in iemer weinet, daz bin ich,
 wan er vil sælic man, jā trōste er wol ze lebenne
 mich.
 der ist nu hin: waz tōhte ich hie?
 wis ime genædic, hērre got,
 wan tugenthafter gast 60
 kam in dīn ingesinde nie.'

4

Ich welte uf guoter liute sage
 und ouch durch mīnes herzen rāt
 ein wīp von der ich dicke trage
 vil manige nōt diu nāhe gāt. 65
 die swære ich z'allen zīten klage,
 wand ez mir kumberlīche stāt.

ich tet ir schīn den dienst mīn:
wie möhte ein grøezer wunder sīn,
daz sī mich des engelten lāt? 70

136

Ze rehter māze sol ein man
beidiu daz herze und al den sin
ze stæte wenden, ob er kan:
daz wirt im līhte ein guot gewin.
swem dā von ie kein leit bekan, 75
der weiz wol wie'ch gebunden bin.
ich gloube im wol, als er mir sol.
von schulden ich den kumber dol:
ich brāhte selbe mich dar in.

5

'Er hāt ze lange mich gemiten 80
den ich mit triuwen nie gemeit.
von sīner schulde ich hān erliten
daz ich nie grøezer nōt erleit.
sō lebt mīn līp nāch sīnem lībe.
ich bin ein wīp, daz im von wībe 85
nie liebes mē geschach, swie mir von im
geschæhe.
mīn ouge in gerner nie gesach dann ich in hiute
sæhe.'

Mir ist vil liebe nu geschehen,
daz mir sō liebe nie geschach.
sō gerne hān ich sī gesehen 90
daz ich sī gerner nie gesach.
ich scheidē ir muot von schwachem muote:
sī ist sō guot, ich wil mit guote
ir lōnen, ob ich kan, als ich doch gerne kunde.
vil mēre frōiden ich ir gan dann ich mir selben 95
gunde.

6

137

Wol mich lieber mære,
diu ich hān vernomen,
daz der winter swære
welle ze ende komen.
kūme ich des erbeiten mac, 100
want ich frōide niht enpflac
sīt der kalte rīfe lac.

Mich enhazzet niemen,
ob ich bin gemeit.
Weiz got, tuot ez iemen, 105
deist unsælekeit,
wande ich schaden niht enkan.
swes ot sī mir wole gan,
waz wil des ein ander man?
110

Solte ich mīne liebe
bergen unde heln,
sō müest ich ze diebe
werden unde steln.
sinneclīch ich daz bewar.
mīn gewerbe ist anderswar, 115
ich gē dannen oder dar.

Sō sī mit dem balle
trībet kindes spot,
daz's iht sēre valle,
daz verbiete got. 120
megde, lāt iur dringen sīn:
stōzet ir mīn frouwelīn,
so'st der schade halber mīn.

7

Ich sach vil wunneclīche stān
die heide mit den bluomen rōt, 125
der vīol der ist wol getān:

des hāt diu nahtegal ir nōt
wol überwunden diu sī twanc.
zergangen ist der winter lanc.
ich hōrte ir sanc. 130

138

Dō ich daz grüene loup ersach,
dō liez ich vil der swære mīn.
von einem wībe mir geschach
daz ich muoz iemer mēre sīn
vil wunneclīchen wol genuot. 135
ez sol mich allez dunken guot
swaz sī mir tuot.

Sī schiet von sorgen mīnen līp,
daz ich dekeine swære hān.
wan āne sī vier tūsent wīp 140
dien heten's alle niht getān.
ir güete wendet mīniu leit.
ich hān sī mir ze friunt bereit,
swaz iemen seit. 145

Mir'n mac niht leides widerstān:
des wil ich gar ān angest sīn.
ergienge ez als ich willen hān,
sō læge's an dem arme mīn.
daz mir der schōenen wurde ein teil,
daz diuhte mich ein michel heil, 150
und wære ouch geil.

Deich ir sō holdez herze trage,
daz ist in sumelīchen leit.
dar umbe ich niemer sō verzage:
sī vliesent alle ir arebeit. 155
waz hilfet sī ir arger list?
si'n wizzzen wie'z ergangen ist
in kurzer frist.

8

Mīn ougen wurden liebes alsō vol,
dō ich die minneclīchen ērst gesach, 160
daz ez mir hiute und iemer mē tuot wol.
ein minneclīchez wunder dō geschach:
sī gie mir also sanfte dur mīn ougen
daz sī sich in der enge niene stiez.
in mīnem herzen sī sich nider liez: 165
dā trage ich noch die werden inne tougen.

139

Lā stān, lā stān! waz tuost du, sælic wīp,
daz du mich heimesuochest an der stat,
dar sō gewalteclīche wībes līp
mit starker heimesuoche nie getrat? 170
genāde, frowe! ich mac dir niht gestrīten.
mīn herze ist dir baz veile danne mir:
ez solde sīn bī mir, nu'st ez bī dir:
des muoz ich ūf genāde lōnes bīten.

9

Ze frōiden nāhet alle tage 175
der werlte ein wunneclīchiu zīt,
ze senfte maniges herzen klage
die nu der swære winter gīt.
von sorge ich dicke sō verzage,
swenn alsō jāmerlīche līt 180
diu heide breit. daz ist mir leit.
diu nahtegal uns schiere seit
daz sich gescheiden hāt der strīt.

10

Sō wol dir, wīp, wie reine ein nam!
wie sanfte er doch z'erkennen und ze nennen ist! 185
ez wart nie niht sō lobesam,
swā du'z an rehte güete kērest, sō dū bist.
dīn lop mit rede nieman wol volenden kan.

swes dū mit triuwen pfligest wol, der ist ein sælic man
und mac vil gerne leben. 190
dū gīst al der werlte hohen muot:
maht dū ouch mir ein wēnic freude geben?

140

VI ULRICH VON LICHTENSTEIN.

Ulrich von Lichtenstein came of a better-class Styrian family, and was born about the year 1200 and died in 1275 or 1276. He was one of the best representatives of the later Court lyrical poets. For editions of his works, see Lachmann, Ausgabe der Dichtungen Ulrichs von Lichtenstein, Berlin, 1841; Bechstein, Ulrichs von Lichtenstein Frauendienst, Leipzig, 1887. The following extracts are taken from Bartsch, Deutsche Liederdichter des zwölften bis vierzehnten Jahrhunderts, Stuttgart, 1889.

1

Ein tanzwīse, und ist diu vierde wīse.

In dem walde sūeze dōene
singent kleiniu vogellīn.
an der heide bluomen schōene
blūejent gegen des meien schīn.
alsō blūet mīn hōher muot 5
mit gedanken gegen ir gūete,
diu mir rīchet mīn gemūete
sam der troum den armen tuot.

Ez ist ein vil hōch gedinge
den ich gegen ir tugenden trage, 10
daz mir noch an ir gelinge,
daz ich sælde an ir bejage.
des gedingen bin ich vrō.
god geb' daz ich'z wol verende,
daz sie mir den wān iht wende 15
der mich freut sō rehte hō.

Sie vil sūeze, valsches āne,
vrī vor allem wandel gar,
lāze mich in liebem wāne
die wīl ez niht baz envar; 20
daz diu vreude lange wer,
daz ich weinens iht erwache,
daz ich gegen dem trōste lache
des ich von ir hulden ger.

141 Wūnschen unde wol gedenken 25
dēst diu meiste vreude mīn.
des sol mir ir trōst niht wenken,
sie enlāze mich ir sīn
mit den beiden nāhen bī,
sō daz sie mit willen gunne 30
mir von ir sō werder wunne
daz sie sælic immer sī.

Sælic meie, du aleine
trōrestest al die welde gar.
du und al diu werlt gemeine 35
vreut mich mīn dann umb ein hār.
wie mōht' ir mir vreude geben
āne die vil lieben guoten?
von der sol ich trōstes muoten;
wan ir trōstes muoz ich leben. 40

2

Ein sincwīse, und ist diu sibende wīse.

Wē war umbe sul wir sorgen?
vreude ist quot.
von den wīben sol man borgen
hōhen muot.
wol im der in kan gewinnen 45
von in! der'st ein sælic man.
freude sol man durch sie minnen,
wan dā līt vil ēren an.

Wir suln tanzen singen lachen
durch diu wīp. 50

142 dā mit mac ein man gemachen
 daz sīn līp
 wirdet wert, ob er mit triuwen
 dienet guoter wībe gruoz.
 swen sīn dienst wil geriuwen, 55
 dem wirt selten kumbers buoz.

Mit dem wazzer man daz, fiuwer
 laschet gar:
 vinster ist der sunnen tiuwer.
 beidiu wār 60
 sint diu mære: ir hœret mære.
 habet für wār ūf minen līp:
 rehten man von herzen sere
 scheidet nieman wan diu wīp. 65

Owē owē, frowe Minne,
 mir ist wē.
 nu grīf her wie sere ich brinne.
 kalder snē
 müeste von der hitze brinnen
 diu mir an dem herzen līt. 70
 kanstu, Minne, triuwe minnen,
 sō hilfestu mir enzīt.

3

Daz ist ein ūzreise.

Wil iemen nāch ēren die zīt wol vertriben,
 ze sælden sich kēren, bī freuden belīben, 75
 der diene ze flīze mit triuwen vil schōne
 nāch der minne lōne: der ist sūeze, reine,
 vil guot und aleine den guoten gemeine.

Swer volget dem schilde, der sol ez enblanden
 dem libe, dem guote, dem herzen, den handen.
 des lōnet vil hōhe mit guotem gewinne 80
 diu vil werde Minne: diu gīt freud' und ēre.
 wol ir sūezen lēre! sie kan trœsten sere.

143 Der schilt wil mit zūhten vil baltlichez ellen:
 er hazzet, er schiuhet Schand' und ir gesellen.
 got des niht enwelle daz man bī im vinde 85
 sō swachlich gesinde, er wil daz die sīnen
 ūf ēre sich pīnen, in tugenden erschīnen.

Erg' unde unfuoge und unfuore diu wilde
 gezimt niht dem helme und touc niht dem schilde,
 der schilt ist ein dach daz niht schande kan decken. 90
 sīn blic tæt' enblecken an ēren die weichen,
 von vorhten erbleichen: diu varwe ist ir zeichen.

Hōchgemuote frouwen, ir sūlt wol gedenken:
 getriuwen gesellen vil stæte āne wenken
 den minnet, den meinnet, mit herzen, mit muote, 95
 daz in iwer huote behalte, behüete
 mit liebe, mit güete, vrī vor ungemüete.

Sie ist āne schulde mir hazlich erbolgen
 der ich ze dienste dem schilde wil volgen.
 nu hān ich für zürnen noch für herzen sere 100
 niht ander schilt mære wan den trōst aleine,
 daz ich sie baz meine dann ie wīp deheine.

Gein ir langen kriege setz' ich mīn gedulde:
 sō stē gein ir hazze ze wer mīn unschulde.
 mīn wer gein den valschen daz sol sīn mīn triuwe 105
 vil sūeze āne riuwe: mīn kampfflich gewæte
 für ir nīdetæte daz sol sīn mīn stæte.

4

Ditz ist der leich.

Got füege mir'z ze guote:
 ich bin noch in dem muote
 daz ich wil guoten wīben 110
 mit dienest āne valschen muot immer bī belīben.
 dā von rāt' ich einen rāt
 der allen wol gemuoten mannen tugentlichen stāt.

144 Ich rāt' iu, ēre gerende man,
 mit triuwen, als ich beste kan:
 ob ir welt werende freude hān, 115

	sō sīt den wīben undertān mit triwen āne valschen muot. ir güete ist alsō rehte guot, swer in mit triwen dienest tuot, den kunnen sie wol machen frō. der werlde heil gar an in lit: ir güete ist freuden hōchgezīt, ir schōene sō vil freuden gīt, dā von diu herze stīgent hō.	120
	Werdekeit sunder leit kunnen sie wol friunden geben. swem sō sī witze bī, der sol nāch ir hulden streben unde zinsen in sīn leben: daz rāte ich ūf die triwe mīn. swer ēren sælic welle sīn und rīche an hōhem muote, der sol mit triwen guotiu wīp reht minnen als sīn selbes līp. vil guot vor allem guote ist der wībe güete, unde ir schōene schōene ob aller schōene. ir schōene ir güete ir werdikeit ich immer gerne krōene. <i>140</i> an ir schōene und an ir güete stāt mīn heil und ouch mīn wunne. wær' guoter wībe schōene niht, wie selten ich gewunne deheinen ēren gernden muot. wol mich daz sie sint alsō guot, daz man hāt von ir güete sō hōhen trōst für senediū leit. ir schōene, ir güete, ir werdikeit gīt mir vil hōch gemüete.	125
145	Mīn muot von wīben hōhe stāt. waz danne ob mir ir einiu hāt erzeiget hōhe missetāt? dēs wār des mac wol werden rāt.	130
	Waz sie gegen mir hāt getān, daz wil ich gerne wizzen lān mit zūhten, als ich beste kan, ūf genāde guotiu wīp. ich hān ir driu und zehen jār gedienet sunder wenken gar, bī mīnen triwen, daz ist wār, daz in der zīt mīn seneder līp nie gewan sölhen wān, des mīn stæte wurde kranc. al mīn gir was gein ir sleht mit triwen āne wanc. nu vert entwer ir habedanc reht als ein rat daz umbe gāt und als ein marder den man hāt in eine lin gebunden. kund' ich als sie unstæte sīn, sō hæt' ich nāch dem willen mīn ān sie ein frowen funden.	135
	Ē daz ich mīn ritterliche stæte bræch' an guoten wīben ich wold' ē immer valscher wībe hulde vrī belīben. ich muoz in der stæten wībe dienest sunder lōn verderben oder ich muoz ir stæten herzen liebe alsus erwerben daz ich gewenke nimmer wanc von in. ir hōhen habedanc, und mag ich den erringen, sō hān ich allez daz ich wil, süez' ougen wunne, herzen spil, vil wunne an allen dingen. Nu waz bedarf mīn seneder līp genāden mēr, ob ich ein wīp ze frowen vinde alsō gemuot,	145
146		150
		155
		160
		165
		170
		175
		180
		185

diu sich vor wandel hāt behuot
 und niht wan daz beste tuot?
 der sol mīn dienest sīn bereit
 immer mē, 190
 swie'z ergē,
 sunder valsch mit stæतिकeit.
 dā von gewinne ich werdikeit
 und alsō freuderīchen sin,
 des ich getiuret immer bin 195
 an aller hande dingen.
 Vind' ich sie, ich sol sō ritterlīchen nāch ir hulden
 ringen.
 daz mir von ir stæतिकeit muoz hō an ir gelingen.
 sie muoz abr ūf die triwe mīn
 gar vrī vor allem wandel sīn, 200
 diech mēr mich lāze twingen
 und ouch in kumber bringen.
 jā gehœret man mich nimmer mē
 deheines valschen wībes lop gesprechen noch gesingen.

5

In dem lufte sūezem meien, 205
 sō der walt gekleidet stāt,
 sō siht man sich schöne zweien
 allez daz iht liebes hāt,
 unde ist mit ein ander vrō.
 daz ist reht: diu zīt wil sō. 210

147

Swā sich liep ze liebe zweiet,
 hōhen muot diu liebe gīt.
 in der beider herzen meiet
 ez mit vreuden alle zīt.
 trūrens wil diu liebe niht, 215
 swā man liep bī liebe siht.

Swā zwei liep ein ander meinent
 herzenlīchen āne wanc
 und sich beidiu sō vereinent
 daz ir liebe ist āne kranc, 220
 die hāt got zesamne geben
 ūf ein wunneclīchez leben.

Stætiu liebe heizet minne.
 liebe, minne, ist al ein:
 die kan ich in mīnem sinne 225
 niht gemachen wol zuo zwein.
 liebe muoz mir minne sīn
 immer in dem herzen mīn.

Swā ein stætez herze vindet
 stæte liebe, stæten muot, 230
 dā von al sīn trūren swindet.
 stætiu liebe ist alsō guot
 daz sie stæte freude gīt
 stætem herzen alle zīt. 235

Mōhte ich stæte liebe vinden,
 der wold' ich sō stæte sīn
 daz ich dā mit überwinden
 wolde gar die sorge mīn.
 stæter liebe wil ich gern
 unde unstæte gar verbern. 240

148

6

Disiu liet diu heizent vrowen tanz:
 diu sol niemen singen, er'n sī vrō.
 swer mit zūhten treit der freuden kranz,
 und dem sīn muot stāt von wīben hō,
 dem erloube ich sie ze singen wol: 245
 blīdeclīchen man sie tanzen sol.

Trūren ist ze wāre niemen guot
 wan dem einen der sīn sūnde klaget,
 hōhen lop erwirbet hōher muot.

guoten wīben hōchmuot wol behaget: 250
dā von wil ich immer mēre sīn
hōchgemuot durch dich, guot vrowe mīn.

Vreude gibt mir dīn wol redender munt,
hōhen muot dīn reine senfte sit':
vreuden tou mir ūz des herzen grunt 255
kumt von dir in elliu mīniu lit.
got hāt sīnen vlīz an dich geleit,
dā von dī lop ēren krōne treit.

Liehtiu ougen, dā bī brūne brā,
hāstu und zwei rōtiu wāngelin. 260
schōene bistu hie und schōene dā.
brūn rōt wīz, der drīer varwe schīn
treit dīn hōchgeborner schōener līp.
tugende hāstu vil, guot wīplich wīp.

Daz du alsō manege tugende hāst,
dā von bin ich alles trūrens vrī.
sō du alsō schōeniu vor mir gāst,
sō ist mir als ich in dem himel sī.
got sō schōenen engel nie gewan 265
den ich für dich wolde sehen an. 270

149

VII DAS NIBELUNGEN-LIED.

B. Text. ÄVENTIURE XVII.

WIE KRIEMHILT IR MAN KLAGTE UND WIE ER BEGRABEN WART.

The following extract is from Bartsch's edition, Leipzig, 1879.

Dō erbiten si der nahte und fuoren über Rīn.
von heleden kunde nimmer wirs gejaget sīn.
ein tier daz si dā sluogen, daz weinden edeliu kint.
jā muosen sīn engelten vil guote wīgande sint. 4

Von grōzer übermüete muget ir hœren sagen,
und von eislicher rāche. dō hiez Hagene tragen
Sīfriden alsō tōten von Nibelunge lant
für eine kemenāten dā man Kriemhilde vant. 8

Er hiez in tougenlichen legen an die türe,
daz sin dā solde vinden so si gienge derfüre
him zer mettīne ē daz ez wurde tac,
der diu vrouwe Kriemhilt vil selten keine verlac. 12

Man lüte dā zem münster nāch gewoneheit.
vrou Kriemhilt diu schōene wahte manige meit:
ein lieht bat si ir bringen und ouch ir gewant.
dō kom ein kamerære dā er Sīfriden vant. 16

Er sah in bluotes rōten: sīn wāt was elliu naz.
daz ez sīn herre wære, nine wesse er daz.
hin zer kemenāten daz lieht truog an der hant
von dem vil leider mære diu vrouwe Kriemhilt ervant. 20

Dō si mit ir vrouwen zem münster wolde gān,
dō sprach der kamerære 'jā sult ir stille stān:
ez līt vor dem gademe ein ritter tōt erslagen.'
dō begonde Kriemhilt vil harte unmæzliche klagen. 24

150

Ē daz si rehte erfunde daz iz wære ir man,
an die Hagenen vrāge denken si began,
wie er in solde vrīsten: dō wart ir ērste leit.
von ir was allen vreuden mit sīme tōde widerseit. 28

Dō seic si zuo der erden, daz si niht ensprach:
die schōenen vreudelōsen ligen man dō sach.
Kriemhilde jāmer wart unmāzen grōz:
do ęrschrē si nāch unkrefte daz al diu kemenāte erdōz. 32

Dō sprach daz gesinde: 'waz ob ez ist ein gast?'

daz bluot ir ūz dem munde von herzen jāmer brast.
dō sprach si 'ez ist Sifrit, der mīn vil lieber man:
ez hāt gerāten Prūnhilt, daz ez hat Hagene getān.' 36

Diu vrouwe bat sich wīsen dā si den helt vant.
si huop sīn schōene houbet mit ir vil wīzen hant.
swie rōt ez was von bluote, si het in schiere erkant.
dō lac vil jāmerliche der helt von Nibelunge lant. 40

Dō rief vil trūreclīche diu küneginne milt:
'owē mir mīnes leides! nu ist dir dīn schilt
mit swerten niht verhouwen; du list ermorderōt.
unt wesse ich wer iz het getān, ich riete im immer sīnen tōt.' 44

Allez ir gesinde klagete und scrē
mit ir lieben vrouwen, wand' in was harte wē
umb' ir vil edelen herren, den si dā heten verlorn.
dō het gerochen Hagene harte Prūnhilde zorn. 48

Dō sprach diu jāmerhafte: 'ir sult hine gān
und wecket harte balde die Sīfrides man.
ir sult ouch Sigemunde mīnen jāmer sagen,
ob er mir helfen welle den küenen Sīfriden klagen.' 52

151 Dō lief ein bote balde da ęr si ligen vant,
die Sīfrides helede von Nibelunge lant.
mit den vil leiden mæren ir vreude er in benam.
si wolden'z niht gelouben unz man daz weinen vernam. 56
Der bote kom ouch schiere dā der künic lac.
Sigemunt der herre des slāfes niht enpflac:
ich wæn' sīn herze im sagete daz im was geschehen,
ern möhte sīnen lieben sun lebenden nimmer gesehen. 60

'Wachet, herre Sigemunt. mich bat nāch iu gān
Kriemhilt mīn vrouwe. der ist ein leit getān
daz ir vor allen leiden an ir herze gāt:
daz sult ir klagen helfen, wand' ez iuch sēre bestāt.' 64

Ūf rihte sich dō Sigemunt; er sprach: 'waz sint diu leit
der schōenen Kriemhilde, diu du mir hāst geseit?'
der bote sprach mit weinen: 'ine kan iu niht verdagen:
jā ist von Niderlanden der küene Sifrit erslagen.' 68

Dō sprach der herre Sigemunt: 'lāt daz schimpfen sīn
und alsō böesiu mære durch den willen mīn,
daz ir daz saget iemen daz er sī erslagen:
wand' ine kunde in nimmer unz an mīn ende verklagen.' 72

'Welt ir mir niht gelouben daz ir mich hōeret sagen,
sō muget ir selbe hōeren Kriemhilde klagen
unt allez ir gesinde den Sīfrides tōt.'
vil sēre erscrac dō Sigemunt: des gie im wærlīchen nōt. 76

Mit hundert sīnen mannen er von den betten spranc.
si zuhten zuo den handen diu scharpfen wāfen lanc,
si liefen zuo dem wuofe vil jāmerliche dan.
dō kōmen tūsent recken des küenen Sīfrides man. 80

Dō si sō jāmerliche die vrouwen hörten klagen,
dō wānden sumelīche, si solden kleider tragen.
janę mohten si der sinne vor leide niht haben:
in wart vil michel swære in ir herzen begraben. 84

Dō kom der künec Sigemunt da ęr Kriemhilde vant.
er sprach: 'owē der reise here in ditze lant.
wer hāt mich mīnes kindes und iuch des iuvern man
bī alsō guoten friunden sus mortlich āne getān?' 88

152 'Hey solde ich den bekennen,' sprach daz vil edele wīp,
'holt enwurde im nimmer mīn herze unt ouch mīn lip:
ich geriete im alsō leide daz die friunde sīn
von den mīnen schulden müesen weinende sīn.' 92

Sigemunt der herre den fürsten umbeslōz.
dō wart von sīnen vriunden der jāmer alsō grōz
daz von dem starken wuofe palas unde sal
und ouch diu stat ze Wormez von ir weinen erschal. 96

Donę kunde niemen tröesten daz Sifrides wīp.
man zōch ūz den kleidern den sīnen schoenen līp.
man wuosch im sīne wunden unt leit' in ūf den rē.
dō was sīnen liuten von grōzem jāmere wē. 100

Dō sprāchen* sīne recken von Nibelunge lant:
'in sol immer rechen mit willen unser hant.
er ist in dirre bürge, der iz hāt getān.'
dō ilten nāch wāfen alle Sifrides man. 104

Die ūz erwelten degene mit schilden kōmen dar,
einlef hundert recken: die hete an sīner schar
Sigemunt der herre. sīnes sunes tōt
den wolde er gerne rechen: des gie im wærlichen nōt. 108

Sine wessen wen si solden mit strīte dō bestān,
sīne tæten'z Gunther unde sīne man,
mit den der herre Sifrit an daz gejegede reit.
Kriemhilt sach si gewāfent: daz was ir groezliche leit. 112

Swie michel wær' ir jāmer und swie starc ir nōt,
dō vorhte si harte der Nibelunge tōt
von ir bruoder mannen, daz si ez understuont.
si warnt' si güetliche sō vriunde liebe vriunde tuont. 116

Dō sprach diu jāmers rīche: 'mīn her Sigemunt,
wes welt ir beginnen? iu ist niht rehte kunt.
jā hāt der künic Gunther sō manigen küenen man:
ir welt iuch alle vliessen, welt ir die recken bestān.' 120

153

Mit ūf erbürten schilden in was ze strīte nōt.
diu edel küneginne bat und ouch gebōt
daz siz mīden solden, die recken vil gemeit.
dō siz niht lāzen wolden, daz was ir wærlichen leit. 124

Si sprach: 'herre Sigemunt, ir sult iz lāzen stān
unz ez sich baz gefüege: sō wil ich mīnen man
immer mit iu rechen. der mir in hāt benomen,
wirde ich des bewiset, ich sol im schedeliche kōmen. 128

Ez ist der übermüeten hie bī Rīne vil:
dā von ich iu des strītes rāten niht enwil.
si habent wider einen ie wol drīzec man.
nu lāz' in got gelingen als si umb uns gedienet hān. 132

Ir sult hie belīben, unt dolt mit mir diu leit;
als iz tagen beginne, ir helde vil gemeit,
sō helfet mir besarken den mīnen lieben man.'
dō sprāchen die degene: 'daz sol werden getān.' 136

Iu enkunde niemen daz wunder volsagen
von rittern unt von vrouwen, wie man die hōrte klagen,
sō daz man des wuofes wart in der stat geware.
die edelen burgære die kōmen gāhende dare. 140

Si klageten mit den gesten, want in was harte leit.
die Sifrides schulde in niemen het geseit,
durch waz der edele recke verlüre den sīnen līp.
dō weinden mit den vrouwen der guoten burgære wīp. 144

Smide hiez man gāhen, wurken einen sarc,
von silber und von golde, vil michel unde starc.
man hiez in vaste spengen mit stahel, der was guot.
dō was al den liuten harte trūrec der muot. 148

Diu naht was zergangen: man sagte ez wolde tagen.
dō hiez diu edele vrouwe zuo den münster tragen
Sifrit den herren, ir vil lieben man.
swaz er dā vriunde hēte, die sach man weinende gān. 152

154

Dō sī in zem munster brāhten, // vil der gloken klanc.
dō hōrt' man allenthalben vil maniges pfaffen sanc.
dō kom der künic Gunther mit den sīnen man
und ouch der grimme Hagene zuo dem wuofe gegān. 156

Er sprach: 'vil liebiu swester, owē der leide dīn,
daz wir niht mohten āne des grōzen schaden sīn.

wir müezen klagen immer den Sifrides lip.
'daz tuot ir āne schulde', sprach daz jāmerhafte wīp. 160

'Wær' iu dar umbe leide, son wær' es niht geschehen.
ir hetet mīn vergezzen, des mag ich wol jehen,
da ich dā wart gescheiden von mīme lieben man.
daz wolde got', sprach Kriemhilt, 'wær' iz mir selber getān.' 164

Si buten vaste ir lougen. Kriemhilt begonde jehen
'swelher sich unschuldige, der lāze daz gesehen;
der sol zuo der bāre vor den liuten gēn.
dā bī mac man die wārheit harte schiere verstēn.' 168

Daz ist ein michel wunder: vil dicke ez noch geschiht,
swā man den mortmeilen bī dem tōten siht,
sō bluotent im die wunden: als ouch dā gescach.
dā von man die sculde dā ze Hagenen gesach. 172

Die wunden vluzzen sēre alsam si tāten ē.
die ē dā sēre klagetēn, des wart nu michel mē.
dō sprach der kunic Gunther 'ich wil'z iuch wizzen lān.
in sluogen schāchære: Hagene hāt es niht getān.' 176

'Mir sint die schāchære', sprach si, 'vil wol bekant.
nu lāze ez got errechen noch sīner vriunde hant.
Gunther unde Hagene, jā habet ir iz getān.'
die Sifrides degene heten dō ze strīte wān. 180

Dō sprach aber Kriemhilt: 'nu habt mit mir die nōt.'
dō kōmen dise beide dā si in funden tōt,
Gērnōt ir bruoder und Giselher daz kint.
in triuwen si in klagetēn mit den anderen sint. 184

155

Si weinden inneclīche den Kriemhilde man.
man solde messe singen: zuo dem münster dan
giengen allenthalben man wīp unde kint.
die sīn doch lihte enbāren, die weinden Sifriden sint. 188

Gērnōt und Giselher sprāchen: 'swester mīn,
nu trōeste dich nāch tōde, als iz doch muoz sīn.
wir wellen dich's ergetzen die wīle unt wir geleben.'
donez kunde ir trōst deheinen zer werlde niemen gegeben. 192

Sīn sarc der was bereitet wol umbe'n mitten tac.
man huop in von der bāre dā er ūfe lac.
in wolde noch diu frouwe lāzen niht begraben.
des muosen al die liute michel arebeite haben. 196

In einen rīchen pfellel man den tōten want.
ich wāene man dā iemen āne weinen vant.
dō klagete herzenlīche Uote, ein edel wīp,
und allez ir gesinde den sīnen wætlichen lip. 200

Dō man daz gehōrte, daz man zem münster sanc,
unt in gesarket hēte, dō huop sich grōz gedranc:
durch willen sīner sēle waz opfers man dō truoc!
er hete bī den vīnden doch guoter vriunde genuoc. 204

Kriemhilt diu arme zir kameræren sprach:
'si suln durch mine liebe liden ungemach,
die im iht guotes gūnnen und mir wesen holt;
durch Sifrides sēle sol man teilen sīn golt.' 208

Dehein kint was sō kleine daz witze mohte haben,
daz muose gēn zem opfer. ē er wurde begraben,
baz danne hundert messe man dā des tages sanc.
von Sifrides vriunden wart dō grōzer gedranc. 212

Dō man dā hete gesungen, daz volc huop sich von dan.
dō sprach diu vrouwe Kriemhilt 'irn sult niht eine lān
hīnte mich bewachen den ūz erwelten degēn.
ez ist an sīme libe al mīn vreude gelegen. 216

156

Drī tage und drī nahte wil ich in lāzen stān,
unz ich mich geniete mīns vil lieben man.
waz ob daz got gebiutet daz mich ouch nimet der tōt?
sō wære wol verendet mīn armer Kriemhilde nōt.' 220

	Zen herbergen giengen die liute von der stat. pfaffen unde müniche si beliben bat und allez sîn gesinde, daz des heldes pflac. si heten naht vil arge unt vil müelichen tac.	224
	Ān ezzen und ān trinken beleip dā manic man. die ez nemen wolden, den wart daz kunt getān, daz man's in den vollen gæbe: daz schuof Sigemunt. dō was den Nibelungen vil michel arebeite kunt.	228
	Die drīe tagezīte, sō wir hoeren sagen, die dā kunden singen, daz si muosen tragen vil der arebeite. waz man in opfers truoc! die vil arme wāren, die wurden rīche genuoc.	232
	Swaz man vant der armen die es niht mohten hān, die hiez man doch zem offer mit dem golde gān ūz sîn selbes kamere. do ęr niht solde leben, umbe sīne sēle wart manic tūsent marc gegeben.	236
	Urbor ūf der erden teilte s'in diu lant, swā sō man diu klōster und guote liute vant. silber unde wæte gap man den armen gnuoc. si tet dem wol geliche daz sim holden willen truoc.	240
	An dem dritten morgen ze rechter messezīt sō was bī dem münster der kirchhof alsō wīt von den lantliuten weinens alsō vol: si dienden im nāch tōde als man lieben vriunden sol.	244
157	In den tagen vieren, man hāt gesaget daz, ze drīzec tūsent marken, oder dannoch baz, wart durch sīne sēle den armen dā gegeben. dō was gelegen ringe sīn grōziu schoene und ouch sīn leben. Dō gote dā wart gedienet und daz man vol gesanc, mit ungefüegem leide vil des volkes ranc. man hiez in ūz dem münster zuo dem grabe tragen. die sīn ungeren enbāren, die sah man weinen unde klagen.	248 252
	Vil lūte scriēnde daz liut gie mit im dan: vrō enwas dā niemen, weder wīp noch man. ē daz man in begrüebe, man sanc unde las: hey waz quoter pfaffen ze sīner pīfilde was!	256
	Ē daz zem grabe kōeme daz Sīfrides wīp, dō ranc mit solhem jāmer der ir getriuwer līp, daz man si mit dem brunnen vil dicke dā vergōz. ez was ir ungemüete vil harte unmæzlichen grōz.	260
	Ez was ein michel wunder daz si ie genas. mit klage ir helfende manic vrouwe was. dō sprach diu küneginne: 'ir Sīfrides man, ir sult durch iuwer triuwe an mir genāde begān.	264
	Lāt mir nāch mīme leide daz kleine liep geschehen, daz ich sīn schoene houbet noch eines müeze sehen.' dō bat si's alsō lange mit jāmers sinnen starc, daz man zebrechen muose den vil hērlīchen sarc.	268
	Dō brāhte man die vrouwen dā si in ligen vant. si huop sīn schoene houbet mit ir vil wīzen hant; dō kuste s' alsō tōten den edelen ritter guot. ir vil liechten ougen vor leide weineten bluot.	272
	Ein jāmerlichez scheiden wart dō dā getān. dō truoc man si von dannen: sine mohte niht gegān. dō vant man sinnelōse daz hērlīche wīp. vor leide möht' ersterben der ir vil wūnneclīcher līp.	276
158	Dō man den edelen herren hete nu begraben, leit āne māze sah man die alle haben die mit im kōmen wāren von Nibelunge lant. vil selten vroelichen man dō Sigemunden vant. Dō was der etelicher der drīer tage lanc vor dem grōzem leide niht az noch entranc. doch mohten si dem lībe sō gar gewīchen niht: si nerten sich nāch sorgen, sō noch genuogen geschīht.	280 284

VIII
WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH.

Wolfram von Eschenbach was a native of Bavaria. Of his life little is known, not even the exact dates of his birth and death. He flourished in the latter part of the twelfth and early part of the thirteenth century, and was by far the best and most extensive representative of the Court epic poetry. He is best known by his Parzival, which contains 24,812 lines divided up into sixteen books. The following extract is taken from Book III. For editions of his works, see Lachmann, Wolfram von Eschenbach, Berlin, 1833, fifth edition, Berlin, 1891; Bartsch, Wolfram's von Eschenbach Parzival und Titurel, Leipzig, 1875.

Sich zōch diu frouwe jāmers balt
ūz ir lande in einen walt,
zer waste in Soltāne;
niht durch bluomen ūf die plāne,
ir herzen jāmer was sō ganz, 5
sinē kērtē sich an keinen kranz,
er wære rōt oder val.
sie brāhte dar durch flūhtesal
des werden Gahmuretes kint.
liute, die bī ir dā sint, 10
müezen būwen unde riuten.
sie kunde wol getriuten
ir sun. ē daz sich der versan,
ir volc sie gar für sich gewan:
ez wære man oder wīp, 15
den gebōt sie allen an den līp,
daz se iemer rīters wurden lūt.
159 'wan friesche daz mīns herzen trūt,
welch rīters leben wære,
daz wurde mir vil swære, 20
nu habet iuch an der witze kraft,
und helt in alle rīterschaft.'

Der site fuor angestliche vart.
der knappe alsus verborgen wart 25
zer waste in Soltāne erzogen,
an küneclicher fuore betrogen;
ez enmōhte an eime site sīn:
bogen unde bōlzelīn
die sneit er mit sīn selbes hant,
und schōz vil vogeles die er vant. 30
swenne ab er den vogel erschōz,
des schal von sange ē was sō grōz,
sō weinde er unde roufte sich,
an sīn hār kērt' er gerich.
sīn līp was klār unde fier: 35
ūf dem plān am rivier
tuoog er sich alle morgen.
er'n kunde niht gesorgen,
ez enwære ob im der vogelsanc,
die suoze in sīn herze dranc: 40
daz erstracte im sīniu prüstelin.
al weinde er lief zer künegīn.
sō sprach sie 'wer hāt dir getān?
du wær' hin ūz ūf den plān.'
er'n kunde es ir gesagen niht, 45
als kinden lihte noch geschicht.
dem mære gienc sie lange nāch.
eins tages sie in kapfen sach
ūf die boume nāch der vogeles schal.
sie wart wol innen daz zeswal 50
von der stimme ir Kindes Brust.
des twang in art und sīn gelust.
160 frou Herzeloide kērtē ir haz
an die vogeles, sine wesse um waz:
sie wolte ir schal verkrenken. 55
ir būliute und ir enken
die hiez sie vaste gāhen,
vogeles würgen unde vāhen.
die vogeles wāren baz geriten:
etsliches sterben wart vermiten: 60
der bleip dā lebendic ein teil,
die sīt mit sange wurden geil.

Der knappe sprach zer künegīn

	'waz wīzet man den vogelīn?'	
	er gerte in frides sā zestunt.	65
	sīn muoter kuste in an den munt:	
	diu sprach 'wes wende ich sīn gebot,	
	der doch ist der hēhste got?	
	suln voegele durch mich frōude lān?'	
	der knappe sprach zer muoter sān	70
	'owē muoter, waz ist got?'	
	'sun, ich sage dir'z āne spot.	
	er ist noch liehter denn' der tag,	
	der antlitzes sich bewac	
	nāch menschen antlitze.	75
	sun, merke eine witze,	
	und flēhe in umbe dīne nōt:	
	sīn triwe der werlde ie helfe bōt.	
	sō heizet einē der helle wirt:	
	der ist swarz, untriuwe in niht verbirt.	80
	von dem kēr' dīne gedanke,	
	und och von zwīvels wanke.'	
	sīn muoter underschiet im gar	
	daz vīster unt daz lieht gevar.	
	dar nāch sīn snelheit verre spranc.	85
	er lerntē den gabylōtes swanc,	
161	dā mite er manegen hirz erschōz:	
	des sīn muoter und ir volc genōz.	
	ež wære æber oder snē,	
	dem wilde tet' sīn schiezen wē.	90
	nu hœret fremdiu mære.	
	swenne er'rschōz daz swære,	
	des wære ein mūl geladen genuoc,	
	als unzerworht hin heim er'z truoc.	95
	 Eins tages gieng er den weideganc	
	an einer halden, diu was lanc:	
	er brach durch blates stimme 'en zwīc.	
	dā nāhen bī im gienc ein stīc:	
	dā hōrt' er schal von huofslegen.	
	sīn gabylōt begund'er wegen:	100
	dō sprach er 'waz hān ich vernomen?	
	wan wolte et nu der tiuvel komen	
	mit grimme zorneclīche!	
	den bestüende ich sicherlīche.	
	mīn muoter freisen von im saget:	105
	ich wære ir ellen sī verzaget.'	
	alsus stuont er in strītes ger.	
	nu seht, dort kom geschūftet her	
	drī rīter nāch wunsche var,	
	von fuoze ūf gewāpent gar.	110
	der knappe wānde sunder spot,	
	daz ieslīcher wære ein got.	
	dō stuont ouch er niht langer hie,	
	in'z phat viel er ūf sīniu knie.	
	lūte rief der knappe sān	115
	'hilf, got: du maht wol helfe hān.'	
	der vorder zornes sich bewac,	
	dō der knappe im phade lac:	
	'dirre tœrsche Wāleise	
	unsich wendet gāher reise.'	120
162	ein prīs den wir Beier tragen,	
	muoz ich von Wāleisen sagen:	
	die sint tœrscher denne beiersch her,	
	und doch bī manlīcher wer.	
	swer in den zwein landen wirt,	125
	gefuoge ein wunder an im birt.	
	 Dō kom geleischieret	
	und wol gezimieret	
	ein rīter, dem was harte gāch.	
	er reit in strīteclīchen nāch,	130
	die verre wāren von im komen:	
	zwēn' rīter heten im genomen	
	ein' frouwen in sīm' lande,	
	den helt ež dūhte schande:	
	in mūetē der juncfrouwen leit,	135
	diu jæmerlīche vor in reit.	

dise drī wāren sine man.
er reit ein schoene kastelān:
sīns schildes was vil wēnic ganz.
er hiez Karnahkarnanz 140
leh cons Ulterlec.
er sprach ‘wer irret uns den wec?’
sus fuor er zuome knappen sān.
den dūhte er als ein got getān:
er’n het’ ē sō liehtes niht erkant. 145
ūfem towe der wāpenroc erwant.
mit guldīn schellen kleine
vor ietwederem beine
wārn die stegreife erklenget
unt ze rehter māze erlenget. 150
sīn zeswer arm von schellen klanc,
swar er’n bōt oder swanc.
der was durch swertslege sō hel:
der helt was gein prīse snel.
163 sus fuor der fürste rīche, 155
gezimiert wūnneclīche.

Aller manne schoene ein bluomen kranz,
den vrāgte Karnahkarnanz
‘junchērre, sāht ir für iuch varen
zwēn’ rīter die sich niht bewaren 160
kunnen an rīterlicher zunft?
sie ringent mit der nōtnunft
und sint an werdekeit verzaget:
sie füerent roubes eine maget.’
der knappe wānde, swaz er sprach, 165
ez wære got, als ime verjach
frou Herzeloyd’ diu künegīn,
do s’im underschiet den liehten schīn.
dō rief er lūte sunder spot
‘nu hilf mir, helfe rīcher got.’ 170
vil dicke viel an sīn gebet
fil li roy Gahmuret.
der fürste sprach ‘ich pin niht got,
ich leiste ab gerne sīn gebot.
du maht his vier rīter sehen, 175
ob du ze rehte kundest spehen.’
der knappe frāgte fürbaz
‘du nennest rīter: waz ist daz?
hāstu niht gotelicher kraft,
sō sage mir, wer gīt rīterschaft.’ 180
‘daz tuot der künec Artūs.
junchērre, komet ir in des hūs,
der bringet iuch an rīters namen,
daz ir’s iuch niemer durfet schamen.
ir muget wol sīn von rīters art.’ 185
von den helden er geschouwet wart:
dō lac diu gotes kunst an ime.
von der āventiurē ich daz nime,
164 diu mich mit wārheit des beschiet: 190
nie mannes varwe baz geriet
vor ime sīt Adāmes zīt.
des wart sīn lop von wīben wīt.

Aber sprach der knappe sān
dā von ein lachen wart getān. 195
‘ay rīter got, waz mahtu sīn?
du hāst sus manec vingerlīn
an dinen līp gebunden,
dort oben unt hie unden.’
aldā begreif des knappen hant
swaz er isers ame fürsten vant: 200
des harnasch begunder schouwen.
‘mīner muoter juncfrouwen
ir vingerīn an snüeren tragent,
diu niht sus an ein ander ragent.’
der knappe sprach durch sīnen muot 205
‘war zuo ist ditze guot,
daz dich sō wol kan schicken?
i’ne mages niht abe gezwicken.’
der fürste im zeigete sā sīn swert:

	<p>'nu sich, swer an mich strītes gert, des selben wer ich mich mit slegen: für die sīne muoꝛ ich an mich legen, und für den schuz und für den stich muoꝛ ich alsus wāpen mich.'</p>	210
	<p>aber sprach der knappe snel 'ob die hirze trüegen sus ir vel, son' verwunt' ir niht mīn gabylōt. der vellet manger vor mir tōt.'</p>	215
165	<p>Die rīter zurnden daz er hielt bi dem knappen der vil tumpheit wielt. der fürste sprach 'got hüete dīn. ōwī wan wær' dīn schoene mīn! dir hete got den wunsch gegeben, ob du mit witzzen soldest leben. diu gotes kraft dir virre leit.'</p>	220 225
	<p>die sīne und och er selbe reit, unde gāheten balde z'einem velde in dem walde. dā vant der gefüege frōn Herzeloyden phlüege.</p>	230
	<p>ir volke leider nie geschach; die er balde eren sach: si begunden sæn, dar nāch egen, ir gart ob starken ohsen wegen. der fürste in guoten morgen bōt, und frāgte sē, op sie sæhen nōt eine juncfrouwen līden, sine kunden niht vermiden, swes er vrāgt', daz wart gesaget. 'zwēne rīter und ein maget</p>	235 240
	<p>dā riten hiute morgen. diu frouwe fuor mit sorgen: mit sporen sie vaste ruorten, die die juncfrouwen fuorten.'</p>	245
	<p>ez was Meljahkanz. den ergāhte Karnachkarnanz, mit strīte er ime die frouwen nam: diu was dā vor frōuden lam. sie hiez Īmāne von der Bēāfontāne.</p>	250
166	<p>Die būliute verzageten, dō die helde für sie jageten. sie sprāchen 'wie'st uns sus geschehen? hāt unser junchërre ersehen ūf disen rītern helme schar,</p>	255
	<p>sonē hān wir uns niht wol bewart. wir sulen der küneginne haz von schulden hœren umbe daz, wand' er mit uns dā her lief hiute morgen dō sie dannoch slief.'</p>	260
	<p>der knappe enruochte ouch wer dō schōz die hirze kleine unde grōz: er huop sich gein der muoter wider, und sagete ir mæ'r'. dō viel sie nider: sīner worte sie sō sēre erschrac, daz sī unversunnen vor im lac. dō diu küneginne wider kom z'ir sinne, swie sie dā vor wær' verzaget, dō sprach sie 'sun, wer hāt gesaget dir von rīters orden? wā bist du's innen worden?' 'muoter, ich sach vier man noch liehter danne got getān: die sageten mir von rīterschaft.</p>	265 270 275
	<p>Artūses küneclichiu kraft sol mich nāch rīters êren an schildes ambet kēren.' sich huop ein niuwer jāmer hie. diu frouwe enwesse rehte, wie daz sie ir den list erdæhte unde in von dem willen bræhte.</p>	280

	Der knappe tump unde wert iesch von der muoter dicke ein pfert. daz begunde sē in ir herzen klagen.	285
167	sie dāhte 'i'n wil im niht versagen: ez muoz aber vil böese sīn.' dō gedāhte mēr diu künegīn 'der liute vil bī spotte sint. tōren kleider sol mīn kint ob sīme liechten lībe tragen. wirt er geroufet unt geslagen, sō kumet er mir her wider wol.' ōwē der jæmerlichen dol! diu frouwe nam ein sactuoch: sie sneit im hemedē unde bruoch, daz doch an eime stücke erschein, unz enmitten an sīn blankez bein. daz wart für tōren kleit erkant. ein gugel man obene drūfe vant.	290 295 300
	al frisch rūch kelberīn von einer hūt zwei ribbalīn nāch sīnen beinen wart gesniten. dā wart grōz jāmer niht vermiten. diu künegīn was alsō bedāht, sie bat belīben in die naht. 'dunē solt niht hinnen kēren, ich wil dich list ē lēren. an ungebanten strāzen soltu tunkel fürte lāzen:	305 310
	die sīhte unde lüter sīn, dā solte al balde rīten īn. du solt dich site nieten, der werelde grūezen bieten. ob dich ein grā wīse man zuht wil lērn als er wol kan, dem soltu gerne volgen, und wis im niht erbolgen. sun, lā dir bevolhen sīn, swa du guotes wībes vingerlīn mūgest erwerben unt ir gruoꝛ, daz nim: ez tuot dir kumbers buoꝛ. du solt z'ir kusse gāhen und ir līp vast' umbevāhen:	315 320
168	daz gīt gelücke und hōhen muot, op sie kiusche ist unde guot. du solt och wīzzen, sun mīn, der stolze küene Lāhelīn dīnen fürsten abe ervaht zwei lant, diu sollen dienen dīner hant, Wāleis und Norgāls. ein dīn fürste Turkentals den tōt von sīner hende enphienc: dīn volc er sluoc unde vienc.' 'diz riche ich, muoter, ruocht es got: in verwundet noch mīn gabylōt.'	325 330 335
	Des morgens dō der tag erschein, der knappe balde wart enein, im was gein Artūse gāch. frou Herzloyde in kuste und lief im nāch. der werelde riuwe aldā geschach. dō sie ir sun niht langer sach (der reit enwec: wem'st deste baz?), dō viel diu frouwe valsches laz ūf die erde, aldā sie jāmer sneit dō daz se ein sterben niht vermeit. ir vil getriulicher tōt der frouwen wert' die hellenōt. ōwol sie daz se ie muoter wart! sus fuor die lōnes bernden vart ein wurzel der güete und ein stam der diemüete. ōwē daz wir nu niht enhān ir sippe unz an den eilften spān! des wirt gevelschet manec līp. doch solten nu getriuwiu wīp	340 345 350 355

NOTES

[The references refer to the paragraphs in the Grammar.]

All notes are directly linked to the text referenced.

I. BERTHOLD VON REGENSBURG

- [p. 79, l. 13.](#) **werdent sehende**, will see.
[p. 79, l. 19.](#) **daz si anders niht enpflege**, see §§ [102](#), [108](#).
[p. 81, l. 34.](#) **von sō getāner freude**, of joy of such a beautiful kind.

II. LANTREHTBUOCH

- [p. 83, l. 26.](#) **mege**, pres. subj. of **mac**, see [§ 93](#).
[p. 85, l. 15.](#) **sempervriēn**, from **sentbærevriēn**, the highest class of freemen.
[p. 85, l. 17.](#) **miter** = **mitter(e)**, *aj. nom. pl.*, middle, see [§ 9, 2](#).

III. DER ARME HEINRICH

- [l. 6.](#) **im**, is reflexive, see §§ [66](#), [104](#).
[ll. 24-5.](#) That this one (er) may pray to God for the salvation of Heinrich's soul.
[l. 31.](#) **ze Swāben** = in the country of the Swabians, i.e. Swabia.
[l. 38.](#) **ze handen haben**, possess.
[l. 50.](#) **versworn**, *pp.* of **verswern**, [§ 86](#).
[l. 101.](#) **des muge wir**: **des** is dependent on **ein wārez bilde**; for **muge**, see [§ 74, note](#).
[l. 106.](#) **sehent** = **sehet**, imperative.
[l. 133-4.](#) **dō . . . alrēst**, as soon as.
[l. 164.](#) **eime** = **eineme**, see [§ 9, 3](#).
[l. 190.](#) **gnislich** = **genislich**, cp. [§ 9, 7](#).
[l. 239.](#) **für die selben frist**, since then.
[ll. 240-1.](#) no longer any hopes of being healed.
[l. 257.](#) **sich abe tuon**, renounce, resign.
[l. 351.](#) **getwelte**, had dwelt, see [§ 106](#).
[ll. 372-3.](#) The construction is **sō ze Salerne vil meister** (*gen.*) **von arzenien ist**, see [§ 102](#).
[l. 376.](#) **kunde** for **kundet**.
[l. 486.](#) **es** *gen.* is dependent on **niht**.
[l. 547.](#) **sich ein dinc an nemen**, to take a thing to heart.
[l. 591.](#) **mohter** = **mohte er**, see [§ 65, note 3](#).
[l. 621.](#) **die wile daz**, so long as.
[l. 640.](#) **wan** = **waz ne**, why not.
[l. 756.](#) **verswige wir** is the imperative, cp. also [note to l. 101](#).
[l. 846.](#) **dime** = **dineme**, see [§ 9, 3](#).

170

IV. WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE

- [l. 144.](#) **kond** *pret.* of **kan**.
[ll. 174-5.](#) They would imagine themselves ruined if they did not exercise a stern rule. On the omission of the negative see [§ 108](#).
[l. 178.](#) **tiuschiu zunge**, German language, i.e. Germany.
[l. 182.](#) **bekērā**, see **ā** in the Glossary.
[l. 185.](#) **Philippe** is *dative*; **en** = **den**.
[l. 187.](#) **man . . . wibe** are the *gen. plural*.

[l. 214.](#) **guoter** is *gen. plural*.

[l. 232.](#) **bluomen . . . wunder**, a great multitude of flowers.

[l. 250.](#) **daz sie schiere got gehoene!** may God curse them soon.

[l. 255.](#) **Der uns freude wider bræhte**, if anyone would bring us joy again.

[l. 285.](#) **bien** = **bī den**.

[l. 292.](#) **weder ir**, which of the two.

[l. 308.](#) **hōhste** (weak form) **name**, the most beautiful *or* precious name.

[l. 429.](#) **du lā dir niht ze wē sīn nāch dem guote**, do not worry yourself too much about wealth.

[ll. 475-6.](#) Very many call thee father, who will not recognize me as their brother.

[ll. 498-9.](#) See Extracts from Reinmar, [ll. 184-192](#).

171

V. REINMAR

[l. 33.](#) **Liutpolt**: Duke Leopold VI of Austria.

[l. 75.](#) **bekan** = **bekam**.

VII. DAS NIBELUNGEN-LIED

[l. 28.](#) **sīme** = **sīneme**, see [§ 9, 3](#); **widerseit** = **widersaget**, [§ 37](#).

[l. 32.](#) **nāch unkreftē**, after she had regained her consciousness.

[l. 37.](#) **bat sich wīsen**, asked them to lead her to.

[l. 43.](#) **ermorderōt**, older form of *pp.* of **ermordern**, see [§ 88, note](#).

[l. 88.](#) **āne tuon**, with *gen.* and *acc.*, bereave, rob.

[l. 92.](#) **weinende sīn** = **weinen**, see [§ 106](#).

[l. 213.](#) **huop sich von dan**, betook themselves away.

VIII. PARZIVAL

[l. 17.](#) that they should never mention the word 'knight'. On the omission of the negative see [§ 108](#).

[l. 42.](#) **weinde** = **weinende**, see [§ 29](#).

[ll. 83-4.](#) The mother explained to him fully the difference between darkness and light, i.e. between the Devil and God.

[l. 141.](#) **leh cons** = **le (li) cons**, the Count.

[ll. 157-8.](#) K. asked him, who was the perfection of human beauty.

[l. 172.](#) **fil li roy**, son of the king.

[l. 243.](#) Supply **ros** as object.

GLOSSARY

172

ABBREVIATIONS

sm., sf., sn., = strong masculine, &c.

sv. = strong verb.

wm., wf., wn., = weak masculine, &c.

wv. = weak verb.

pret.-pres. = preterite-present.

pn. = proper name.

The remaining abbreviations need no explanation.

The Roman numeral after a verb indicates the class to which the verb belongs. The ordinary numerals after a word indicate the paragraph in the Grammar where the word either occurs or some peculiarity of it is explained.

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [Z](#)

A

ā, *interj.* added to the imperative, nouns, and particles;

neinā, certainly not.

ab, abe, *prep. c. dat.* of, from;

av. away, away from, [9.6](#).

aber, abr, ab, *av.* and *cj.* again, once more, but;
aber sprächen, answer, reply.
acker, *sm.* field, acre, [9.2](#), [31.2](#), [42](#).
Adām, *pn.* Adam.
adamas, *sm.* diamond.
æber, *sn.* place where the snow has melted away.
ænic (with *gen.*), *aj.* bereft.
äher (OHG. **ahir**), *sn.* ear of corn.
aht(e), *num.* eight, [62](#).
aht(e), *sf.* attention, meditation; station, position.
ahtede, *num.* eighth, [62](#).
ahten, *wv.* observe, consider, deliberate.
ah(t)zēhen, *num.* eighteen, [62](#).
ah(t)zēhende, *num.* eighteenth, [62](#).
ah(t)zic (-ec), *num.* eighty, [62](#).
ah(t)zigeste, *num.* eightieth, [62](#).
al (*infl.* **aller, allez, alliu (älliu, elliu)**), *aj.* all;
al dā, there, thereupon;
al dō, as soon as;
al ein, all one, the same;
aller hande, of all kinds;
alle wēge, everywhere, [55](#).
aleine, *av.* alone.
allenthalben, *av.* on all sides.
allertegelich, *av.* daily.
allez, *av.* always, already.
allmahtic (almähtic, almehtic), *aj.* all-powerful, almighty.
almuosen, *sn.* alms, charity.
alrēst = aller ērst, at first.
als, see **alsō**.
alsam, *av.* as, just as, [69](#).
alsō (alse, als), *av.* as, just as, so, likewise, [69](#);
alse dar, always, all the time.
alsolch = solch.
alsus (alsust), *av.* in this manner, so, thus.
alt, *aj.* old, former, [10](#), [57](#).
alter, *sn.* age.
alwære, *aj.* foolish.
alze, *av.* too, too much.
alzehant, *av.* on the spot, at once, immediately.
am = an dēm.
ambet, *sn.* service, office, calling.
anblic, *sm.* look.
ander, *num.* and *pr.* other, second, [55](#), [62](#), [71](#).
anders, *av.* otherwise, else;
niht anderswan, nothing but.
anderswar, *av.* elsewhere.
ane (an), *prep. c. dat.* or *acc.* on, by, in; of; along with; until, [9.6](#);
an dēn līp, by (their) life, on the penalty of (their) life;
an dēr stat, at once, on the spot.
āne (ān), *av.* alone, free, deprived of;
eines āne wērdēn, to lose;
cj. except;
prep. c. acc. or *gen.* without, except, next to.
ange, *av.* narrowly, exactly, carefully, anxiously, [9.7](#).
anger, *sm.* grass plot.
angesiht, *sf.* sight.
angest, *smf.* care, sorrow, anxiety.
anges(t)lich, *aj.* anxious, fearful, dangerous, terrible.
anme, amme, ame, am = an dēme, [68 note 2](#).
ansēhen, *sv. V.* look at, behold.
anst (*pl.* **enste**), *sf.* favour, [49](#).

antlütze, antlitze, *sn.* face, countenance.
antwürten (*pret.* **antwortte**), *wv.* answer.
apfel, *sm.* apple, [31.2](#).
ar, *wm.* eagle, [9.1](#), [50](#).
arbeit (arebeite), *sf.* work, trouble, grief.
arbeitsam, *aj.* painful, troublesome.
arc (-ges), *aj.* bad, mischievous, wicked.
arm, *aj.* poor, helpless, unhappy, [57](#).
arm, *sm.* arm.
armuot, *sf.* poverty, want.
art, *smf.* inborn manner, nature, quality; origin, descent.
Artūs, *pn.* Arthur, king of Britain.
arzāt, *sm.* physician.
arzenie, *sf.* medicine, remedy.
ās, *sn.* carrion, [28](#).
ātem, *sm.* breath, [42](#).
āventiure, *sf.* wonderful event
ay, *interj.* ah! alas!

B

bābest, *sm.* pope.
bāgen, *sv.* VII, quarrel, [87](#).
bal (-lles), *sm.* ball.
balde, *av.* boldly, bravely, valiantly; quickly;
balde wërden enein, be quickly resolved.
balt, *aj.* courageous, full of courage, firm, unyielding.
baltlich, *aj.* courageous.
bange, *aj.* anxious, [9.7](#).
bannen, *sv.* VII, banish, expel, put under the ban, [87](#).
bar, *aj.* bare, [55](#).
bāre, *sf.* beer.
bat (-des), *sn.* bath, flood of tears.
baz, *av.* better, more, [61](#);
baz geriten, quicker;
baz veile, of less value;
wēm'st deste baz?, who feels joy at this parting?
Bēāfontāne, *pn.*
bedāht, *p.p.* thoughtful, intent.
bēde = beide.
bedecken (*pret.* **-dacte**, **-dahte**), *wv.* cover, [90](#).
bedenken (*pret.* **-dāhte**, *subj. pret.* **-dæhte**), think over, consider;
sich dēs willen bedenken, decide upon a thing.
bediuten, *wv.* expound;
refl. mark, denote.
bedriezen, *sv.* II, seem troublesome *or* irksome.
bedunken (*pret.* **-dūhte**), *wv.* seem, appear.
bedurfen, bedürfen (*pr. sing.* **-darf**), *pret. pres.*, need, require;
see **durfen**.
begān, *anom. v.* to do a thing;
refl. live;
see **gān**.
begiezen, *sv.* II, pour over, moisten.
beginnen, *sv.* III (*pret.* also weak **begunde, begonde**), begin, [81](#).
begraben, *sv.* VI, bury, inter.
begrīfen, *sv.* I, grasp, understand.
begunder = begunde ër.
behagen, *wv.* please, delight, suit.
behalten, *sv.* VII, hold, keep, preserve, reserve, store up.
beherten, *wv.* harden, enforce.
behüeten, *wv.* keep, preserve, protect.
behuot, *p.p.* of **behüeten**.

beide (*bēde*), *num., neut.* **beidiu**, both;
beide—und, both—and.

beidenthalben, *av.* on both sides.

Beier, *pn.* people of Bavaria, Bavarians.

beier(i)sch, *aj.* Bavarian.

bein, *sn.* bone, leg, [5](#), [11](#).

beiten, *wv.* wait;
sn. a waiting.

bejagen, *wv.* acquire, get.

bejēhen, *sv.* V, assure.

bekan = bekam.

bekennen (*pret.* **-kante**), *wv.* know, recognize, get to know.

bekēren, *wv.* employ, turn;
bekēren sich, turn round.

bekomen, *sv.* IV, get, obtain.

beliben (**bliben**), *sv.* I, remain, [9.7](#), [76](#);
under wēgen beliben, be left undone, cease.

beliuchten, *wv.* illumine, explain, make manifest.

benamen = bī namen, in the true sense of the word.

benēmen, *sv.* IV, take, take away;
c. gen. exempt.

berāten, *sv.* VII, consider, arrange, provide for;
refl. consider, reflect.

bērc (**-ges**), *sm.* mountain.

bereit (**bereite**), *aj.* ready, willing;
av. readily, willingly, [55](#).

bereiten (*pret.* **-reite**), *wv.* plough, make arable, prepare, make ready.

bērgen, *sv.* III, hide, [81](#).

bērn, *sv.* IV, bear, carry, bring forth, [9.1](#), [19](#), [82](#).

bern (*pret.* **berte**), *wv.* beat, strike.

berouben, *wv.* bereave, rob.

berüeren, *wv.* touch, move.

besarken (**beserken**), *wv.* put into the coffin.

beschēhen, *sv.* V, happen.

bescheiden, *sv.* VII, make clear, explain.

bescheiden (**bescheidenlich**), *aj.* sensible, prudent.

bescheidenheit, *sf.* understanding, sense, prudence.

bescheidenlichen, *av.* definitely, clearly, sensibly.

beschern, *wv.* bestow upon, divide, let out.

bēseme, *wm.* besom; rod.

besitzen (*pret.* **-saz**), *sv.* V, take possession of.

besliezen, *sv.* II, close, shut.

besorgen, *wv.* provide, be conscious of; requite.

bestān, *anom. v.* remain; attack, assail;
einen bestān, concern, belong to.

beste, *aj.* and *av.* best, [9.5](#), [23.1](#), [61](#).

besunder, *av.* apart.

beswærde, *sf.* affliction, grief, sadness.

beswæren, *wv.* afflict, grieve.

beswern (*pret.* **-swuor**, *pp.* **-sworn**), *sv.* VI, take an oath, swear to.

bēte, *sf.* request, command.

bēten, *wv.* pray, [92](#).

betrahten, *wv.* view, consider.

betriegen, *sv.* II, deceive.

betrüeben, *wv.* make gloomy *or* angry.

bette, *sn.* bed, [10](#), [46](#).

bettestat, *sf.* couch, place of rest.

bevēlhen, *sv.* III, order, recommend; bring home to a person, [19](#), [34](#), [81](#).

bevinden, *sv.* III, become sensible of, get to know.

bewachen, *wv.* watch, guard.

bewarn, *wv.* protect, guard against, preserve; avert, ward off, prevent.

bewëgen (*sich* with *gen.*), *sv.* V, resolve to *or* upon, take upon oneself; part with, cast off.

bewenden (*pp.* -want), *wv.* turn to, use.

bewîsen, *wv.* put right, inform, instruct.

bezzern (*superl.* **bezzest**, **beste**), *aj.* better, [58](#).

bezzern, *wv. refl.* get better, improve.

bezzernunge, *sf.* improvement, [8](#).

bî, *prep.* and *av.* near, near by, with, beside; thereby;

bî sîn with *dat.* of person: be near, have;

bî mînen triuwen, in truth, upon my word!;

bî mînen zîten, during my lifetime;

bî spotte sîn, like mockery;

bî wësen, remain.

bibenen (**biben**, *pp.* **bibent**), *wv.* quake, tremble.

biderbe, *aj.* noble, active, good.

biegen, *sv.* II, bow, bend, [5](#), [11](#), [12](#), [15](#), [16](#), [18](#), [33](#), [78](#).

bien = **bî dën**.

bieten, *sv.* II, offer, show, [5](#), [11](#), [18](#), [25](#), [78](#).

bilde, *sn.* example, comparison.

bilden, *wv.* form.

billich, *aj.* becoming, right.

billichen, *av.* rightly, properly, befittingly.

bin, *am*, [97](#).

binden, *sv.* III, bind, fasten, [10 note 2](#), [11](#), [12](#), [15](#), [33](#), [81](#);

wol gebunden, with the hair neatly braided and decked out.

bir, *swf.* pear, [50](#).

bîten, *sv.* I, wait, put off, delay, [76](#).

bit(t)en (*pret.* **bat**), *sv.* V, ask, beg, request, command, [3](#), [26](#), [31.3](#), [84](#).

bitter, *aj.* bitter, [20](#), [31.2](#), [55](#).

bitterlich, *aj.* bitter, [8](#).

bitterlichen, *av.* bitterly.

biz, *sm.* bite, [44](#).

bîzen, *sv.* I, bite, [5](#), [19](#), [76](#).

blâ (-wes), *aj.* blue, [36](#), [55](#).

blanc, *aj.* white, shining, beautiful.

blâsen, *sv.* VII, blow, [87](#).

blat, *sn.* leaf.

blî (-ges), *snm.* lead, [35](#).

blîben = **belîben**.

blic (-ckes), *sm.* glance, look; splendour.

blideclichen, *av.* blithely, joyfully.

blint (-des), *aj.* blind, [7](#), [9.2](#), [55](#), [56](#).

bliuwen, *sv.* II, strike, [16 note](#), [19](#), [36](#), [79](#).

blōz, *aj.* bare, naked; only.

blüejēn, **blüewēn**, **blüēn**, *wv.* bloom, [19](#), [35](#), [90](#).

blüemen, *wv.* bloom, [90](#).

bluome, *wmf.* flower, blossom.

bluot, *sn.* blood.

bluoten, *wv.* bleed.

boc (-ckes), *sm.* he-goat, [10](#), [32.1](#).

böcklîn, *sn.* little he-goat, [10](#).

bœse, *aj.* bad, worthless, despicable.

boge, *wm.* bow.

bölzēlîn, *sn.* little cross-bow, bolt *or* arrow.

borgen, *wv.* borrow.

bote, *wm.* messenger, [51](#).

bougen, **böugen**, *wv.* bend, [10](#).

boum, *sm.* tree.

bōzen, *sv.* VII, beat, strike, [87](#).

brā (**brāwe**), *swf.*, brow, eyebrow; eyelash, [48](#).

brāten, *sv.* VII, roast, [87](#).

brēchen, *sv.* IV, break, pluck, gather; neglect, [82](#).

breit, *aj.* wide, broad.
brennen, *wv.* burn, [10](#), [11](#), [90](#).
bresten, *sv.* IV, break, burst, be deficient, want, lack, [19](#).
brief (-ves), *sm.* letter, [33](#), [44](#).
bringen (*pret.* **brähte**, *pret. subj.* **brähte**), bring, [28](#), [29](#), [91](#);
sich bringen läzen, let oneself be brought;
vür bringen, carry out.
brinnen, *sv.* III, burn, [81](#).
briuwen, *sv.* II, brew, [16 note](#), [79](#).
brøde, *aj.* breakable, perishable.
bröt, *sn.* bread.
brugge, brügge (brucke, brücke), *sf.* bridge, [10 note 3](#), [26](#), [31.3](#).
brün, *aj.* brown; dark-coloured.
brunne, *wm.* spring, well, brook.
bruoch, *sf.* covering for the upper part of the thigh.
bruoder, *sm.* brother, [3](#), [5](#), [11](#), [24](#), [25](#), [45](#).
brust (*pl.* **bruste, brüste**), *sf.* breast, bosom, [10 note 3](#), [49](#).
brüt (*pl.* **briute**), bride, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#).
bū (-wes), *smn.* cultivated land; farmhouse; dwelling, abode, [42](#).
büechlin, *sn.* little book, [10](#).
būman (*pl.* **būliute**), *sm.* peasant, farmer, farm labourer.
buoch, *sn.* book, [10](#).
buosem, *sm.* bosom, [9.2](#).
buoz, *sm.* remedy, compensation, reparation;
buoz tuon *c gen.*, free from, liberate from.
būr, *sm.* peasant.
burc (-ge), *sf.* castle, town, [10 note 1](#), [49](#).
burgære, *sm.* citizen, parishioner.
burt, *sf.* birth, of good family.
butze, *wm.* hobgoblin, bug-bear;
in butzen wīs, like a ghostly hobgoblin.
būwen, biuwen (*pret.* **biute**), *wv.* till, cultivate, plant.

C

For **c** see **k**.

D

dā, dār, *av.* there, where, [39](#), [69](#);
dā mite, therewith;
dā von, thereby;
dā vor, before it *or* that;
dā zuo, thereby, therewith, thereto.
dach, *sn.* covering, [31.3](#).
dagen, *wv.* be silent, [92](#).
dahte, see **decken**.
danc (-kes), *sm.*.. thanks, wish;
sunder or an' mīnen danc, against my wish.
danken, *wv.* thank, [9.2](#).
danne, denne (dan), *av.* then;
after the comparative, than as;
in conditional sentences with or without **ne** = unless.
dannen, *av.* from there, thence; wherefrom, [69](#).
dannoch (dennoch), *av.* however, even, still; besides, in addition to this; moreover.
dar, dare, *av.* thither, whither, [69](#);
dar an, thereon, in that, therein;
dar für, before it;
dar nāch, thereupon, after that;
dar umbe, therefore, [69](#);
dar under, amongst them, in between;
dar zuo, besides, in addition.
dārinne, darinne, *av.* therein.
daz *cj.* that.

dechein, *pr.* no, none, [71](#).

decken (*pret.* **dacte**, **dahte**), *wv.* cover, [23.2](#), [31.3](#), [32.2](#), [90](#).

dēgen, *sm.* warrior, vassal, [11](#).

dehein, **dekein**, *pr.* any one; no, none, [71](#).

deich = **daz ich**.

deist = **daz ist**.

denen (**dennen**), *wv.* stretch, [92](#).

denken (*pret.* **dāhte**), think, [5](#), [11](#), [28](#), [29](#), [91](#).

denne = **danne**.

dennoch, see **dannoch**.

dēr, **daz**, **diu**, *def. art., dem. pr., and rel. pr.*, the, who; [9.6](#), [68](#), [69](#);
dēs, *av.* with which, thereby, therefore, wherefore.

derfüre, *av.* out.

dernider, *av.* down.

dērst = **dēr ist**.

dēst, **deis**, **dēs** = **daz ist**, [68 note 1](#).

deste, *av.* the more, all the more;
before comparatives, the, so much, [11](#).

dēswär (= **daz ist wār**), *av.* truly, in truth, indeed.

dewēder, **dwēder**, *pr.* one of two, neither of two, [71](#).

dez = **daz**.

dic (**dicke**), *aj.* thick, dark, [55](#);
av. **dicke**, often;
dicke baz, often still better.

die = Middle Germ. form of **dēr**.

diech = **daz ich**.

diemüete, *sf.* humility.

dien = **die en**.

dienen, *wv.* serve, earn, deserve; requite, [9.2](#), [92](#).

dienest (**dienst**), *sm.* service, serviceableness; devotion, [9.2](#);
ze dienste, out of devotion.

dienstman, *sm.* servant, feoffee.

diep (**-bes**), *sm.* thief;
ze diebe wërden, become a thief.

diezen, *sv.* II, resound, roar, rush, [18](#), [78](#).

dīhen (*pret.* **dēch**, *pp.* **gedigen**), *sv.* I, thrive, [17](#), [30](#), [76](#).

dīn, *pr.* thy, [9.3](#), [67](#).

dinc (**-ges**), *sn.* thing, affair, [46](#).

dingen, *wv.* speak, make a contract.

dirre, **diser**, **dise** (*neut.* **ditze**, **diz**, **diz**; *fem.* **disiu**), *pr.* this, [68](#).

diuhen, *wv.* change, remove; press, shove.

diuten, *wv.* intimate, relate, display.

diuwe (**diw**), *sf.* servant, [48](#).

dō, **do**, *av.* and *cj.* then, when, as, [69](#).

doch, *av.* yet, however, nevertheless.

dol, *sf.* suffering, pain, distress, misery, [48](#).

doln, *wv.* endure, tolerate, suffer, [90](#).

dōn, **tōn** (*pl.* **doene**), *sm.* sound, melody, song.

donreslac (**-ges**), *sm.* thunder-clap, lightning,

dorf (*pl.* **dörper**), *sn.* village, hamlet, [10](#).

dorn, *sm.* thorn, [24](#).

dörperlich, *aj.* peasant-like, rustic.

dort, *av.* there, yonder.

douwen, **dōuwen**, *wv.* digest, [10](#).

dræjen (**dræn**), *wv.* turn, [35](#), [90](#).

drāte, *av.* quickly, immediately;
alsō drāte, directly, forthwith.

dreschen, *sv.* IV, thrash, [11](#), [82](#).

drī (*neut.* **driu**), *num.* three, [62](#), [63](#);
drier hande, of three kinds.

dringen, *sv.* III, press, throng, shoot up, also *sn.*, [81](#);

für sich dringen, press forwards, spread.
drīstunt, *av.* thrice.
ditte, drite, *num.* third, [26](#), [62](#).
drīvaltic, *aj.* threefold.
drīzic (-ec), *num.* thirty, [62](#).
drīzēhen, *num.* thirteen, [62](#).
drīzēhende, *num.* thirteenth, [62](#).
drīzigeste, *num.* thirtieth, [62](#).
drouwe (drowe, drō), *sf.* threat, threatening.
drouwen, drōuwen, *wv.* threaten, [3](#), [10](#).
drucken, drücken, *wv.* press, [10 note 3](#), [90](#).
drūfe = dar ūfe.
drumb(e), *av.* to that end, therefore.
drunder = dar under.
dū, du, *pr.* thou;
gen. dīn; dat. dīr; acc. dich;
pl. nom. ir; gen. iuwer; dat. iu; acc. iuch, [65](#).
dulden, *wv.* endure.
dūme, *wm.* thumb.
dunken, dūnken (*pret. dūhte, pret. subj. diuhte*), seem, appear, [5](#), [10 note 2](#), [11](#), [29](#), [91](#);
sich ze nihte dunken, to imagine oneself undone.
dünne, *aj.* thin, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [55](#).
durch (dur), *prep.* through, on account of, for, for the sake of, [34](#);
dur daz, on this account, for that reason, therefore;
durch plates stimme, for drawing sounds *or* notes from the leaf; for making a whistling sound on the leaf;
durch sinen muot, through his (childish) mind.
durfen, dūrfen (*pres. sing. darf, pret. dorfte, pret. subj. dōrfte*), *pret. pres.* need, [16](#), [93](#).
durftige, *wm.* beggar, one in want of help.
dūz = du ēz.

E

ē, ēr, *av.* formerly, rather, sooner, before, [39](#), [61](#).
ēben, *aj.* even, [55](#), [60](#).
ēbene, *av.* evenly, smoothly, well-fitting, [60](#).
ecke, *swf., sn.* corner, [31.3](#).
edel(e), *aj.* and *av.* noble, [60](#).
edelinc, *sm.* son of a nobleman, [8](#).
edeln, *wv.* ennoble.
egen, *wv.* harrow.
egeslich (eislich), *aj.* fearful, terrible, [37](#).
ēht (ēt, ôt), *av.* only; even, at any rate, [34](#).
ei (*pl. eijer, eiger, eier*), *sn.* egg, [35](#), [47](#).
ei, *interj.* ah.
eiden, *wv.* take an oath, pledge.
eigen, *aj.* own, [55](#).
eigen, *sn.* property;
ze eigen gēben, present.
eilfte, *aj.* eleventh, [62](#).
ein, *num.* and *indef. art.* one; a, an, [9.3](#), [62](#), [63](#);
indef. pr. one, some one, [71](#).
einander, *pr.* one another.
eine, *av.* alone.
eines, *av.* once.
einic (-ec), *aj.* only, single.
einlif, einlef (eilif), *num.* eleven, [62](#).
ei(n)lifte (eilfte), *num.* eleventh, [62](#).
eischen, *sv.* VII, ask, demand.
eislich, see **egeslich**.
eit (-des), *sm.* oath.
element, *sn.* element.

ēlich, *aj.* legal, conjugal.
ellen, *sn.* courage, valour; manliness.
ellenboge, *wm.* elbow.
ellenden, *wv.* go abroad.
ellich, *aj.* universal, constant.
elter, *aj.* older.
eltlich, *aj.* elderly, old.
emphēlhen, *sv.* III, recommend, [81](#).
emzekeit, *sf.* activity, diligence, industry.
en, *neg. particle*, generally used before the verb with or without **niht** after the verb, *not*.
en in subordinate sentences with the subjunctive, *unless, if not, except that, when that, that not, &c.*
en = in;
shortened form of **dēn**.
enbērn, *sv.* IV, be without a thing, do without.
enbieten, *sv.* II, bid, announce, summon.
enblanden, *sv.* VII, let be painful *or* irksome to.
enblecken, *wv.* make visible, expose.
ende, *sn.* end.
endelichen, *av.* throughout, entirely.
enden, *wv.* end, finish.
enein = in ein.
enge, *aj.* narrow, [55](#).
enge, *sf.* narrow place, strait, difficulty.
engel, *sm.* angel, [9.2](#), [42](#).
Engellant, *pn.* England, [54](#).
engēlten, *sv.* III, pay, requite.
enges(t)lich, *aj.* anxious, timid, dangerous.
enke, *wm.* man who tends the cattle.
enmitten, *av.* in the midst;
enmitten dō, during, whilst.
enpfāhen, **enpfān**, *sv.* VII, accept, receive.
enpfallen, *sv.* VII, pass away, perish.
enpfinden, *sv.* III, perceive, become conscious of.
enpflegen, *sv.* V, care for, cherish.
enphēlhen, *sv.* III, order, recommend, [81](#).
entrinnen, *sv.* III, escape.
entsagen, *wv.* free, remove, withdraw.
entseben (-seven), *sv.* VI, perceive, [86](#).
entsetzen, *wv.* bereave, rob.
entslāfen, *sv.* VII, fall asleep.
en(t)springen, *sv.* III, spring up, shoot up, shoot forth.
entstān, *sv.* VI, understand.
entwēr, **entwērch**, *av.* athwart; perversely.
entwēsen, *sv.* V, be without, do without.
entwīchen, *sv.* I, yield, go away.
enwēc, *av.* away.
enzīt, *av.* by times, soon.
enzünden, *wv.* light, kindle.
enzwischen, *prep.* between.
ēr, **si (sī, siu, sie)**, **ēz**, *pr.* he, she, it;
gen. **sīn (ēs)**, **ir, ës**; *dat.* **im(e), ir, im(e)**; *acc.* **in, sie (si, sī)**, **ēz (iz)**;
pl. nom. acc. **si, sī, sie**, *neut.* also **siu**; *gen.* **ir(e)**; *dat.* **in**, [65](#).
ērbære, *aj.* honourable, decent, modest.
erbarmen, *wv.* move to pity.
erbe, *sn.* inherited property, inheritance.
erbeit = arbeit.
erbeiten, *wv.* work, have trouble;
c. gen. wait for.
erbēlgen, *sv.* III, become angry, grow angry.
erben, *wv.* be hereditary, descend from generation to generation.
erbieten, *sv.* II, show, manifest.

erbiten, *sv.* I, wait.
erbleichen, *wv.* become pale.
erbolgen, *pp.* angered, angry with.
erbürn, *wv.* raise, lift up.
erde, *wf.* earth, world, [14.2](#).
erdenken (*pret.* **erdächte**, *pret. subj.* **erdächte**), *wv.* think out, devise, contrive.
erderich = **ërtrich**.
erdiezen, *sv.* II, resound, re-echo.
erdringen, *sv.* III, gain by force.
erdröuwen, *wv.* compel by threats.
ëre, *wf.* honour, renown, [11](#).
ëren, *wv.* honour.
ërest, **ërste**, *aj.* first, [59](#).
ergāhen, *wv.* overtake, go to meet.
ergān, *sv.* VII, come out, happen.
erge, *sf.* wickedness.
ergēben, *sv.* V, submit, devote.
ergetzen, *wv.* cause to forget, compensate.
ergrifen, *sv.* I, seize.
erhāhen, **erhān**, *sv.* VII, hang.
erheben, *sv.* VI, raise;
refl. rise.
erhöeren, *wv.* hear.
erkalten, *wv.* become cold.
erkant, *aj.* known.
erkennelich, *aj.* well-known, renowned.
erkennen (*pret.* **-kante**, **-kande**), *wv.* recognize, perceive, understand; know.
erkiesen, *sv.* II, elect, select, choose.
erklengen, *wv.* make resonant *or* sonorous.
erlāzen, **erlān**, *sv.* VII, release, forgive.
erlengen, *wv.* lengthen.
erleschen, *sv.* IV, extinguish.
erliden, *sv.* I, suffer.
erlouben, **erlöuben**, *wv.* allow, permit, [10](#).
erlöesen (*pp.* **erlöst**), *wv.* remove, free, deliver.
ermordern, *wv.* murder.
ern, **eren**, **erren** (*pret.* **ier**, *pp.* **gearn**), *sv.* VII, till, plough, [87](#).
ërn = **ër ne**.
ernern, *wv.* rescue, heal, cure.
erniuwen, *wv.* renew.
ërnst, *sm.* fervour.
errēchen, *sv.* IV, avenge.
ërrer, **ërre**, **ërre**, *aj.* former, [59](#).
erringen, *sv.* III, gain, obtain, get.
erscheinen, *wv.* show, make to appear.
erschellen, *sv.* III, resound.
erschiezen, *sv.* II, shoot, shoot through, pierce to death.
erschīnen, *sv.* I, appear; dawn.
erschrecken, *sv.* IV, frighten, become frightened;
refl. c. gen. become frightened at.
erschriēn (*pret.* **-schrē**), *sv.* I, shriek, cry out.
ersēhen, *sv.* V, see, perceive.
erslahen, **erislān**, *sv.* VI, slay, kill.
ër(e)st, **ërste**, *av.* at first, so soon as, [61](#).
ërste, *num.* first, [9.5](#), [62](#).
erstërben, *sv.* III, die.
erstrecken (*pret.* **erstracte**), *wv.* expand, spread out.
ërtrich (**ërdërīch**), *sn.* earth, world.
ertrinken, *sv.* III, drown, perish.
ervēhten, *sv.* IV, gain by fighting;

with **abe** and *dat.*: win *or* gain from by fighting.
ervinden, *sv.* III, experience, get to know.
ervollen, *wv.* become full.
ervröuwen, *wv.* rejoice, make glad.
erwachen, *wv.* awake.
erwecken (*pret.* **-wahte**), *wv.* waken, awaken.
erweln, *wv.* elect, choose.
erwerben, *sv.* III, reach, attain, acquire, beget.
erwern, *wv.* prevent, hinder.
erwinden, *sv.* III, turn round; be thrown back, be reflected.
erzeigen, *wv.* show, prove.
erziehen, *sv.* II, bring up, educate.
esche, *wf.* ash.
ët, êt = èht.
etelich, eteslich (etlich, etslich), *pr.* many a one, any one;
pl. some, [71](#).
etewër, eteswër, *pr.* any *or* some one;
neut. **etewaz**, anything, something, [70](#), [71](#).
ettewanne (eteswenne, ettewenne), *av.* sometimes.
ëvangēlium, *sn.* gospel.
ëwic, *aj.* everlasting.
ëwiclichen, *av.* ever, everlastingly.
ëz, *pr.* it, [65](#).
ëzzen (*pp.* **gëzzen**), *sv.* V, eat, [9.7](#), [19](#), [20](#), [23.1](#), [28](#), [83](#).

F

For **f** see **v**.

G

gābe, *sf.* gift.
gablōt, gabilōt, *sn.* small javelin *or* dart.
gāch (-hes), *aj.* quick, rapid, [55](#);
gāch wesen (with *dat.* of pers.), be in a hurry;
mir ist gāch, I hasten;
gen. **gāhes** as *av.*
gadem, *sn.* room, bed-room; house, [46](#).
gæhe, *aj.* quick, hasty.
gāhelōs, *aj.* fickle, wanton.
gāhen, gæhen, *wv.* hasten, hurry.
Gahmuret, *pn.* the name of Parzival's father.
galge, *wm.* gallows, scaffold.
galle, *swf.* gall, bitterness, grief.
gan, see **gunnen**.
gān, gēn, *sv.* VII, go, [87](#), [95](#);
umbe gān, go *or* turn round.
ganz, *aj.* whole, entire, complete, [19](#), [60.3](#).
ganzliche(n), *av.* completely, [60.3](#).
gar (-wes), *aj.* ready, prepared, [9.1](#), [36](#), [55](#).
gar, *av.* fully, entirely, completely.
gart, *sm.* goad, whip.
gartenære, *sm.* gardener, [8](#).
gast (*pl.* **geste**), stranger, guest, [3](#), [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [44](#).
gearbeiten, *wv.* work.
gebærde, *sf.* countenance.
gebären, *wv.* behave, conduct oneself.
gēbe, *sf.* gift, [7](#), [48](#).
gebeine, *sn.* bones, remains.
gēben, *sv.* V, give, grant, [5](#), [12](#), [14.2](#), [25](#), [28](#), [33](#), [83](#).
gēben, *pp.* = **gegēben**.
gebende, *sn.* head-dress.

gebēt, *sn.* prayer.

gebieten, *sv.* II, order, command.

gebot, *sn.* command, order, commandment.

gebrächen = brächen.

gebreste, *wm.* defect, waste.

gebresten = bresten.

gebüezen, *wv.* atone for, improve.

gebüre, *wm.* peasant, citizen.

geburt, *sf.* birth, noble birth.

gedagen, *wv.* keep silent.

gedanc, *sm.* thought, [44](#).

gedanken = danken.

gedenken (*pret.* **-dāhte**), *wv.* think, intend, strive; bear in mind, remember.

gedienen, *wv.* earn, deserve, obtain.

gedihen (gedien), *sv.* I, thrive, speed well, advance.

gedinge, *wm.* or *sfn.* hope, confidence; thought; contract.

gedingen, *wv.* negotiate.

gedranc (-ges), *sm.* thronging, crowd.

gedulde, gedult, *sf.* patience.

gedultelichen, *av.* patiently.

gedultic (-ec), *aj.* patient, indulgent, [10 note 1](#).

gedultikeit, *sf.* patience.

geenden, *wv.* end, finish.

gefüege, *aj.* befitting, suitable, seemly.

gefuoge, *sf.* fitness, good breeding.

gegān = gān.

gegēben = gēben.

gēgen (gein), *prep.* against, opposite to, towards, to; at, for, [37](#).

gegihte, *sn.* gout, cramp.

gegrüezen, *wv.* greet, salute.

gehaben (refl.), *wv.* be, fare, feel.

geheizen, *sv.* VII, promise; call, name.

gehelfen = helfen.

gehenge, *sf.* permission.

gehiure, *aj.* lovely, charming, gracious.

gehænen, *wv.* dishonour, abuse, revile, curse.

gehæren, *wv.* hear.

gehōrsam(e), *sf.* obedience.

geil, *aj.* joyous, joyful, gay.

geist, *sm.* spirit, mind, ghost.

gejegede, *sn.* hunt.

geklopfen, *wv.* knock.

gël (-wes), *aj.* yellow, [55](#).

gelāz, *snm.* formation, figure, shape.

gelēben, *wv.* live, live to see.

geleischiert, *pp.* with or having the reins of the horse slack;
see **leischieren**.

geleisten = leisten.

geleit = geleget.

geleite, *sn.* protection, retinue;
wm. attendant, companion.

gëlf (gëlph), *aj.* shining; merry, insolent.

gelich (glic), *aj.* like, same, straight, even, [9.7](#);
av. **geliche**, equally, in like manner.

gelichen, *refl. wv.* be like, be equal; resemble.

gelieben, *wv.* love, make dear, please.

geligen, *sv.* V, succumb, be ruined.

gelimpfen, *wv.* be meet, [23.2](#).

gelingen, *sv.* III, succeed, [81](#);
mir gelingt wol, I have good success.

gelit, glit (-des), *sn.* member, [9.7](#).
geloube, *wm.* faith.
gelouben, gelöuben, *wv.* believe, think, [10](#), [33](#), [90](#).
gält (-des), *sn.* money.
gälten, *sv.* III, pay, requite; procure, [9.4 note](#), [81](#).
gelücke, *sn.* good fortune, happiness.
gelust, *sm.* wish, desire; joy, pleasure.
gemach, *smn.*, rest, ease; bedroom.
gemachen, *wv.* make.
gemahle, *wf.* bride.
gemeine, *aj.* common, familiar.
gemeit, *aj.* happy, joyful.
gemēren, *wv.* increase.
gemīden, *sv.* I, avoid, keep at a distance.
gemīten, *sv.* I, shun, avoid.
gemüete, *sn.* disposition, desire, longing; heart.
gemuot, *aj.* minded, disposed, inclined.
genāde, gnāde, *sf.* grace, favour, kindness, [9.7](#);
in addressing a person: be gracious;
genāde sagen, thank;
ūf genāde, graciously.
genādelōs, *aj.* unhappy, without grace.
genāden, *wv.* to thank.
genædic, *aj.* gracious, merciful.
genæme, *aj.* beloved, dear, pleasant.
genanne, gnanne, *wm.* namesake, [9.7](#).
genēsen, *sv.* V, recover, become well *or* free, [30](#), [83](#).
genieten, *wv. refl.* rejoice, be glad, become satisfied with.
geniezen, *sv.* II *c. gen.*, enjoy, have advantage of; make use of, use as food.
genisbære, *aj.* healable, curable.
genislich, *aj.* healable, curable.
genist, *sf.* recovery.
genōz, *sm.* companion.
genōzen (hin ze), *wv.* compare, compare with.
genüegen, *wv.* be sufficient, suffice;
mich genüeget dēs, that is enough for me.
gnuoc, gnuoc, *aj.* and *av.* enough, [9.7](#);
pl. many;
as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.* enough.
genüogen = genüegen.
gequeln, *wv.* plague, torment.
gēr, gir, *sf.* longing, eager desire.
gerāde, grāde, *aj.* quick, [9.7](#).
gerāten (pret. -riet), *sv.* VII, advise; come at; prosper, thrive, succeed.
gerēch, grēch, *aj.* straight, [9.7](#).
gerich, *sm.* revenge, vengeance.
gerihite, *sn.* jurisdiction.
gerinclichen, *av.* small, easily.
geringen, *sv.* III, struggle, strive.
geriute, *sn.* arable land.
geriuwen, *wv.* repent, lament.
gēr̄n (with *gen.* and *dat.*), *wv.* long for, yearn for, desire, want, hanker after.
gēr̄ne, *av.* willingly, gladly.
gerte, *swf.* rod.
gerūmen, *wv.* leave, make room.
geruochen, *wv.* be pleased, hold good for.
gesagen, *wv.* say, tell.
geschaffen, *sv.* VI, provide, care for, create.
geschafft, *sf.* creature, [28](#).
geschēhen, *sv.* V, happen, fall to one's lot *or* share, [19](#), [34](#), [83](#).
geschiht, *sf.* occurrence, event.

geschlähte, *sn.* race, generation, [10](#).
gesegen, *wv.* bless.
gesehen = sēhen.
geselle, *wm.* companion.
geselleschaft, *sf.* company.
gesin = sîn.
gesinde, *sn.* retinue;
wm. retainer.
gesingen = singen.
gesitzen = sitzen.
gesmac, *sm.* taste, smell.
gesorgen, *wv.* trouble oneself; fear, dread.
gespile, *wm.* play-mate, comrade.
gesprächen = sprächen.
gestân, *sv.* VI, remain.
gesteine, *sn.* precious stones.
gestern, *av.* yesterday.
gestriten, *sv.* I, quarrel, fight, strive.
gesūmen, *wv.* stay, delay, let one wait.
gesunde (gesund), *aj.* healthy, alive.
gesund, *sm.* health.
gesweigen, *wv.* bring to silence.
geswīchen, *sv.* I, weary, tire; leave in the lurch.
getar = tar, see **turren**.
getragen = tragen.
getriulich, *aj.* through, owing to faithfulness.
getriuten, *wv.* love, like, be fond of.
getriuwe, *aj.* faithful, good.
getriuwen, getrūwen, *wv.* trust, confide in.
getroesten, *wv. refl.* bear with patience, forget.
getrūren, *wv.* mourn, grieve, be downcast.
getrūwen, see **getriuwen**.
getuon = tuon.
geturren, *pret. pres.* dare, venture.
getweln, *wv.* dwell, stay.
gevallen, *sv.* VII, fall to one's lot, please.
gevangen(e), *wm.* prisoner, [50](#).
gevar, *aj.* having colour.
gevarn, *sv.* VI, go, travel;
wol gevarn, make a successful journey.
gevolgen, *wv.* obey.
gevüege, gefüege, *aj.* courteous, well-bred.
gewæte, *sn.* clothing.
gewāhenen, *sv.* VI, mention, [86](#).
gewalt, *smf.* power, might, command.
gewalteclich, *aj.* violent, mighty;
av. **gewaltecliche**.
gewaltic, *aj.* powerful, mighty.
gewant, *sn.* clothing.
gewant (*pp.* of **wenden**), conditioned, circumstanced;
so gewante sache, of such a nature;
ēz ist alsō gewant, it is important;
ēz ist niht alsō gewant, the matter is not so.
gewar(e), *aj.* sensible, mindful.
geweinen, *wv.* weep, cry.
gewenen, *wv.* accustom.
gewenken, *wv.* waver, vacillate; bend, turn.
gewērbe, *sn.* activity.
gewērñ, *wv.* perceive, perform.
gewērren, *sv.* III, be troublesome, hinder.
gewin (-nnes), *sm.* gain, advantage.

gewinnen, *sv.* III, get, gain, obtain, receive, [81](#);
für sich gewinnen, get for oneself.
gewis (-sses), *aj.* certain, sure, [31](#).
gewisse, *av.* surely, truly, certainly.
gewonheit, *sf.* custom.
gewürme, *sn.* worm, insect; reptile, creeping creature.
gezēmen, *sv.* IV, become, beseem;
mich gezimt dēs, that pleases me.
gezierde, *sf.* adornment.
gezwicken, *wv.* pinch, pull, pluck.
giezen, *sv.* II, pour, [28](#), [78](#).
gift, *sf.* gift, [28](#).
giht, *third pers. sing. of jēhen*.
gir, see **gēr**.
gīst = gibest, [37](#).
gīt = gibet, [37](#).
glast, *sm.* splendour.
gličnisse, *sn.* parable.
glocke, *sf.* bell.
gnanne, see **genanne**.
golt, *sn.* gold, [3](#), [15](#).
got, *sm.* God, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#).
gotelich, *aj.* divine.
goteshūs, *sn.* church, monastery.
gotheit, *sf.* godhead.
götinne, *sf.* goddess, [5](#), [10](#).
gotvar (-wes), *aj.* godlike, divine.
gouch, *sm.* cuckoo; fool.
grā (-wes), *aj.* grey, [55](#).
graben, *sv.* VII, dig, [10](#), [12](#), [85](#).
gram, *aj.* hostile.
grap (-bes), *sn.* grave, [46](#).
gras, *sn.* grass.
grīfen, *sv.* I, seize, grasp, touch, feel.
grim (-mmes), *sm.* rage, fury.
grimme (grimmic), *aj.* fearful, angry; great.
grimmen, *sv.* III, rage.
grīs (grīse), *aj.* grey, old, [55](#).
grœzlich, *aj.* great.
grœzlichen, *av.* greatly, very.
grōz, *aj.* great, large, [9.2](#), [57](#).
grūen(e), *aj.* green, [5](#), [10](#), [55](#).
grūezen, *wv.* greet, [39](#);
also *sn.*
grunt (-des), *sm.* bottom.
gruoz, *sm.* greeting, salutation.
güete, *sf.* goodness, kindness, [5](#), [10](#).
güetlich, *aj.* friendly;
av. **güetlichen**.
gugel, *sf.* cowl; cape, hood.
guldin, *aj.* golden, [3](#), [15](#).
gunēren, *wv.* dishonour, disgrace.
gunnen, gūnnen (*pres. sing. gan; pret. gunde, pret. subj. gunde, gūnde*), *pret. pres.* grant, bestow,
not to grudge, [9.7](#), [93](#).
guot, *aj.* good, [9.2](#), [25](#), [55](#), [58](#);
daz guot, wealth, property;
ze guote, to the good.
gürtel, *sm.* girdle, belt, sash.
güsse, *sf.* inundation, [28](#).
gütinne, *sf.* goddess, [48](#).

habe, *sf.* possession.

habedanc, *sm.* thanks with words.

haben (**hān**), *wv.* have, hold, [3](#), [99](#);
haben sich an dēr witze kraft, collect all one's wits together.

hacken, *sm.* hook, fetter; footprint.

haft, *sm.* bond, fetter.

hagel, *sm.* hail; misfortune, destruction.

Hagene, *pn.*, [54](#).

hāhen (**hān**), *sv.* VII, hang, [29](#), [30](#), [38](#), [87](#).

halde, *wf.* slope, declivity.

halm, *sm.* blade, stalk.

halp (**-bes**), *aj.* half.

halsen, *sv.* VII, embrace, [87](#).

halten (**halden**), *sv.* VII, hold, keep; stop, keep from, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [40](#), [87](#).

hān, see **haben**.

handeln, *wv.* do, perform.

handelunge, *sf.* action, [8](#).

han(e), *wm.* cock, [9.4](#), [31.3](#).

hant (*pl.* **hende**), hand, [49](#).

hār, *sn.* hair.

hārbant, *sn.* head-band.

harnasch, *smn.* harness.

harpfen, *wv.* play the harp.

hart, *aj.* hard, [19](#).

harte, *av.* very, very great, [60](#);
comp. **harder**, more; more seriously.

hase, *wm.* hare, [7](#), [30](#).

haz, *sm.* hate, hatred, enmity; indignation, anger, wrath, [19](#).

hazlich, *aj.* full of hate, hostile.

hazzen, *wv.* hate.

heben (**heven**), *sv.* VI, raise, [30](#), [86](#);
sich (an) heben, betake oneself, begin.

hei, *interj.* an exclamation of joy, grief, or wonder.

heide, *sf.* heath, uncultivated land; meadow.

heiden, *sm.* heathen, [9.2](#).

heil, *sn.* happiness, welfare, good fortune.

heilant, *sm.* Saviour, [8](#).

heilic (**-ec**), holy, [7](#), [8](#), [55](#).

heiliggeist, *sm.* holy ghost.

heim, *smn.* home;
heime, *av.* at home.

heimlich (**-lich**), *aj.* homely, familiar.

heimsuochen, *wv.* visit; attack with evil intent.

heimsuochunge, *sf.* disturbance of domestic peace and security.

heimvart, *sf.* homeward journey.

heiz, *aj.* hot, [31.3](#).

heizen, *sv.* VII, call, be called, named; bid, [11](#), [17](#), [23.1](#), [87](#).

hël (**-lles**), *aj.* resounding.

hëlfe, *sf.* help.

hëlfen, *sv.* III, help, [3](#), [11](#), [12](#), [14.2](#), [15](#), [23.2](#), [81](#).

helle, *sf.* hell.

hellemōr, *sm.* devil.

hellenōt, *sf.* necessity of hell.

helm, *sm.* helm, helmet, [11](#).

helme, *wm.* warrior.

hëln (with double *acc.*), *sv.* IV, hide, conceal.

helt (*gen.* **heldes**, **heledes**), *sm.* hero, protector, brave warrior.

hemede, **hemde**, *sn.* shirt.

hendelinc (**-ges**), *sm.* glove, [8](#).

hengen, *vv.* hang, [30](#).
henne, *swf.* hen, [31.3](#).
hēr, hēre, *aj.* and *av.* high, proud, haughty, agreeable, [55](#).
her, *sn.* army, host.
hēr(e), *av.* hither, this way.
herbërge, *sf.* lodging.
hêrlîch, *aj.* agreeable, distinguished;
av. **hêrlîchen**.
hërre, hërre, hër, *wm.* master, lord, [9.3](#), [9.6](#).
hërren, *vv.* to make as master.
hêrsen, hêrsen, *vv.* rule, govern, [9.2](#).
herte (hart), *aj.* hard, difficult, [60](#);
av. **harte (herte)**, [60](#).
hërze, *wn.* heart, [7](#), [19](#), [23.2](#), [50](#), [52](#).
hërzeleit, *sn.* heart-sore, grief.
hêrzelîch, *aj.* dear, affectionate.
hêrzeliep, *sn.* heart's joy.
Hêrzeloyde, *pn.* the name of Parzival's mother.
hêrzenlîch, *aj.* hearty, dear, affectionate;
av. **hêrzenlîchen**.
hêrzeriuwe, *sf.* great grief, sadness of heart, pain.
hêrzesêre, *sf.* great sorrow, grief.
heven, see **heben**.
hey, *interj.*, hey!
hie, hier, *av.* here, [5](#), [11](#), [39](#);
hie bî, herewith, hereby;
hie vor(e), formerly, in former times.
hierunder, *av.* hereunder, [39](#).
himel, *sm.* heaven, sky.
himelîsch, *aj.* heavenly, [8](#).
himelkrône, *sf.* heavenly crown.
himelrîch, *sn.* kingdom of heaven.
hin, hinnen, *av.* from here, hence, away;
hin für, without, out of doors;
hin heim, away home.
hinder, *aj.* hinder;
prep. behind, [59](#).
hindernisse, *snf.* hindrance, [8](#).
hinderste, *aj.* hindmost, [59](#).
hînte, hînt, hînaht, *av.* to-night, [34](#).
hîrât, *sm.* marrying, marriage.
hirte, *sm.* shepherd, [3](#), [43](#).
hirtelôs, *aj.* shepherdless.
hirz (OHG. **hiruz**) beside **hirz** (OHG. **hirz**), *sm.* stag.
hitze, *sf.* heat, warmth, [31.3](#).
hiute, *av.* to-day;
hiute morgen, this morning.
hōch (*comp.* **hœher**, *superl.* **hœchst, hōchst**), *aj.* high, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [19](#), [34](#), [57](#), [60](#).
hōchgeborn, *aj.* of gentle birth; noble.
hōchgemuot, *aj.* noble, high-minded; lofty, proud; joyful, in high spirits.
hōchgezît, *sf.* festival, feast, highest joy.
hōchmuot, *sm.* consciousness, pride, well-being.
hōchvart, *sf.* pride, haughtiness.
hœne, *aj.* haughty; contemptible.
hœnen, *vv.* dishonour, calumniate.
hœren, *vv.* hear; be requisite, be necessary, require; listen; belong to, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [90](#).
hof (-ves), *sm.* court, [19](#), [30](#), [33](#), [42](#).
hogen, *vv.* think, consider.
hōhe, hō, *av.* highly, [60](#).
hōhgemüete, *sn.* joyousness, joyfulness.
hol, *aj.* hollow, [55](#).

holn, *wv.* fetch;
tiefen siuft holn, sigh deeply.
holt (-des), *aj.* kind, affectionate, well-disposed.
holz, *sn.* wood, [19](#).
honic, honec (-ges), *smn.* honey, [29](#).
hornunc (-ges), *sm.* February; frost; chilblain.
houbet, *sn.* head, [5](#), [10](#).
houwen, *sv.* VII, hew, [36](#), [87](#).
hovelich, *aj.* courtly, court-like.
hovelichen, *av.* courtly, in the manner of the court.
hübesch, *aj.* noble, courtly, chivalrous, [30](#).
hüeten, *wv.* protect, shield, hold, keep, guard.
huge, *sm.* thought, [43](#).
hügen, *wv.* consider, [15](#).
hulde, *sf.* grace, favour, kindness, permission, [10 note 1](#).
hundertste, *num.* hundredth, [62](#).
hundertstunt, *num.* hundred times.
hunger, *sm.* hunger.
hunt, hundred, *num.* hundred, [62](#), [64](#).
huobe, *sf.* a piece (hide) of land.
huofslac (*dat. pl. huofslegen*), *sm.* horseshoe.
huon (*pl. hüener*), *sn.* hen, [47](#).
huote, *sf.* care, guardianship.
hupfen, hüpfen, *wv.* hop, [10 note 3](#).
hūs (*pl. hiuser*), *sn.* house, [3](#), [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [33](#).
hūt (*dat. pl. hiuten*), *sf.* skin, hide.

I

ich, *pr.* I, [23](#), [65](#).
ie, *av.* ever.
iedoch, *av.* however.
iegelich, iegeslich (ieglich, ieslich), *pr.* each, [71](#).
ieman, iemen, *pr.* anyone, no one, someone, somebody, [71](#).
iemer, immer, *av.* ever, always, at any time, never.
ietwēder, *pr. aj.* each of two, [71](#).
iewēder, *pr.* each, [71](#).
iewelich, *pr.* each, [71](#).
iewiht, *pr.* anything, [71](#).
iezu, *av.* now, directly.
iht, *pr.* anything;
av. not, [71](#).
ilen, *wv.* hasten.
Imāne, *fpn.*
in, *prep.* in, into.
in, *pr. acc.* him.
īn, in, *av.* in, into, from out here.
in, ine = ich ne, I not.
ī'n = ich in.
ingesinde, *sn.* household, family; followers.
inme, imme = in dēme.
inneclich, *aj.* inward;
av. **inneclichen**, at heart.
innen, inne, *av.* within, inwardly;
inne bringen, observe, let understand, convince;
inne wērdēn, hear of, learn of.
ir, *pr.* her, their, ye, [71](#).
irdenisch, *aj.* earthly.
irdīn, *aj.* earthen, [14.2](#).
irdisch, *aj.* earthly, [8](#).
irre, *aj.* astray;

dēs rīches irre, astray in regard to the kingdom.
irren, *wv.* put out, confound, hinder, interrupt, stop.
irs = ir ës.
īser, *sn.* iron, iron weapon, armour.
iuwer (iwer), *pr.* your, [67](#).
iz = ëz, [65 note 1](#).

J

jā, *interj.* forsooth.
jæmerlich, *aj.* pitiable, sad, sorrowful;
av. **jæmerliche(n)**.
jagen, *wv.* pursue, follow, hunt.
jāmer, *sm.* grief, pain;
jāmers balt, courageous in grief.
jāmerhaft, *aj.* painful, sorrowful.
jār, *sn.* year; age, [19](#).
jēhen, *sv. V.* say, speak; assure, grant, concede, [35](#), [83](#).
jener, *pr.* that, [68](#).
jenhalp, *av.* on that side, the other side.
jēsen, *sv. V.* ferment, [35](#), [83](#).
jēten, *sv. V.* weed, [35](#).
joch, *av.* and *conj.* also, even, yet.
jude, *wm.* Jew.
jugent, *sf.* youth, [49](#).
junc (-ges), *aj.* young, [19](#), [57](#).
juncfrouwe, *wf.* maiden.
junchërre, *wm.* young sir.
junger, *sm.* disciple.

K

kal (-wes), *aj.* bald, [55](#).
kāle, see **quāle**, [36](#).
kalp (pl. kälber), *sn.* calf, [47](#).
kalt, *aj.* cold.
kälte, *sf.* coldness, [11](#).
kamerære, *sm.* chamberlain, guard of the treasure, *or* bed-room.
kampflich, *aj.* warlike.
kapfen, *wv.* stare, gape, look on with astonishment.
Karnahkarnanz, Karnachkarnanz, *pn.* Count of Unterlec.
kastelān, *sn.* Castilian horse.
kēc, see **quēc**.
kein, *pr.* no, none, [71](#).
keiser, *sm.* emperor.
keiserlich, *aj.* imperial.
kelberīn, *aj.* of a calf.
kemenāte, *sf.* room, bed-room.
kennen, *wv.* know, [90](#).
kēren, *wv.* turn, go, [90](#);
sich kēren, turn;
ze gote kēren, apply to God's service.
kerze, kërze, *wf.* candle.
kiesen, *sv. II.* test, try, choose, elect, [5](#), [11](#), [18](#), [30](#), [33](#), [78](#).
kil, *sm.* quill, [9.1](#), [42](#).
kindelīn, *sn.* little child, [8](#).
kindisch, *aj.* childish, [8](#).
kinne, *sn.* chin.
kint (-des), *sn.* child, [33](#).
kintlich, *aj.* childish.
kirchhof, *sm.* churchyard.

kīt = **quīt**, [36](#).

kiusch(e), *aj.* chaste, modest, pure, spotless; maidenly.

kiuwen, *sv.* II, chew, [16 note](#), [36](#), [79](#).

klage, *sf.* complaint, lamentation.

klagen, *wv.* complain, bewail, [92](#);

klagedez hërze, mournful heart.

klār, *aj.* clear, bright, beautiful, pure.

klē (-wes), *sm.* clover, trefoil.

klēben, *wv.* stick, [92](#).

kleiden, *wv.* clothe, dress.

klein(e), *aj.* little, neat, insignificant;

av. **kleine**.

kleit (*pl.* **kleit** or **kleider**), *sn.* dress.

klieben, *sv.* II, cleave, [18](#), [78](#).

klingen, *sv.* III, ring, toll.

klōsenære, *sm.* hermit, recluse.

klōster, *sn.* cloister, monastery.

klūs, *sf.* cell, hermitage.

knabe, *wm.* boy, youth, [31.1](#).

knappe, *wm.* a youth who has not yet become a knight, [31.1](#).

knēht, *sm.* boy, candidate for knighthood, attendant; warrior.

knēten, *sv.* V, knead, [83](#).

knie (*gen.* **kniewes**), *sn.* knee, [3](#), [23.2](#), [36](#), [46](#).

komen, *sv.* IV (*pres.* **kume**, **kum**; *pret.* **quam**, **kom**; *pret. subj.* **quæme**, *pp.* **komen**), come, [36](#), [82](#).

kopf, *sm.* head.

kōr, *sm.* choir.

korder, **körder**, see **quërder**, [36](#).

korn, *sn.* corn, [23.2](#).

korp (-bes), *sm.* basket.

koufen, **köufen**, *wv.* buy, acquire; earn, [10](#), [90](#).

krā, **krāwe**, *sf.* crow.

kraft, *sf.* strength, might; multitude.

kranc, *sm.* weakness.

kranc, *aj.* impotent, weak; little; worthless.

kranz, *sm.* garland, wreath.

krēatiure, **krēatūr(e)**, *sf.* creature.

kreftic, *aj.* strong, powerful.

kriec (-ges), *sm.* resistance, strife, quarrel.

kriechen, *sv.* II, creep, crawl, [78](#).

Kriemhilt, *pn.* [54](#).

krippe (kribbe), *swf.*, manger (cradle), crib, [26](#).

Krist, *sm.* Christ.

kristen, *aj.* and *sb.* christian.

kristenheit, *sf.* christianity, christian faith.

kriuze, *sn.* cross.

krönen, *wv.* crown, adorn.

krōne, *swf.* crown.

kuchen, **küchen**, *sf.* kitchen, [10 note 3](#).

küele, *aj.* cool.

küen(e), *aj.* bold, warlike.

kumber, *sm.* grief, trouble.

kumberliche, *av.* with grief, with oppression.

kumbersal, *sn.* distress, [8](#).

kūme, *av.* scarcely, hardly.

künde, *sf.* acquaintance, knowledge;

kunde haben (with *gen.*), know.

kunde, see **künnen**.

künden, *wv.* announce, promise.

kündic, *aj.* known.

küneclich, *aj.* kingly, royal.

künic (-ec), *sm.* king, [7](#), [8](#), [29](#).
künne, race, generation; relationship, [7](#), [10](#), [46](#).
kün(n)egin(ne), **künegīn**, *sf.* queen, king's daughter, [8](#), [48](#).
künnen, kunnen (*pret.* **kunde, konde**), *pret. pres.* know, understand, can, [93](#).
kunst, *sf.* art, skill, [19](#).
kunt (-des), *aj.* known.
kuo (*pl.* **küeje, küewe**), *sf.* cow, [49](#).
kupfer, *sn.* copper, [31.2](#).
kurz, *aj.* short, small;
vor kurzer stunt, recently.
kurzewīle, *sf.* pastime, entertainment.
kus (-sses), *smn.* kiss, [32.1](#).
küssen, *wv.* kiss, [20](#), [32.2](#), [90](#).

L

lā, *imperative* of **lāzen**, q.v.
lachen, *wv.* laugh, laugh at;
 also *sn.*
laden, *sv.* VI, load, [85](#).
laden, *wv.* invite, [92](#).
lære, *aj.* empty, [3](#), [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [55](#).
Lāhelīn, *mpn.*
lam, *aj.* lame, weak in the limbs.
lamp (*pl.* **lember**), lamb, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#), [33](#), [47](#).
lān, see **lāzen**.
lanc, *aj.* long, [10](#), [60](#);
av. **lange**, [60](#).
lanclēben, *sn.* long life.
lanclip, *sm.* long life.
lant (-des), *sn.* land, country.
lantliut, *sn.* country folk, vassalage;
pl. inhabitants.
lantrēhtbuoch, *sn.* book of common *or* land laws.
lantsæze, *wm.* freeholder.
last, *sm.* burden.
laster, *sn.* ignominy, disgrace.
laz (-zzes), *aj.* feeble, languid, faint, exhausted; weary.
lāzen, lān, *sv.* VII, let, leave, give up; stop, avoid, [87](#), [99](#);
lān niht ze wē sīn, not to worry too much;
lāzen sīn, cease, stop;
lā stān, cease! stop!
lēben, *wv.* live, cause to live, [92](#).
lēben, *sn.* life.
lēbendic (-ec), *aj.* living, alive.
legen (leggen, lecken), *wv.* lay, place, put, [31.3](#), [92](#);
arbeit dar an legen, expend much trouble on a thing.
leh (= le or li) cons, Count.
lēhen, *sn.* feudal tenure, loan, fee, feod.
leich, *sm.* song consisting of strophes of unequal length.
leide, *av.* painfully, sorrowfully;
comp. **leider**, greater pain, grief, trouble.
leiden, *wv.* be repugnant, odious, *or* offensive; render disagreeable, do harm;
mir leidet ēz, it is repugnant to me.
leider, *av.* and *interj.* unfortunately, alas!
leie, *wm.* layman.
leischieren, *wv.* give a horse its head.
leisten (*pret. subj.* **leiste = leistete**), *wv.* follow the trace of, follow, perceive;
leisten geselleschaft, accompany.
leit (-des), *aj.* sorrowful, bitter, painful, disagreeable; hateful, vexatious.
leit (-des), *sn.* grief, pain.
leit = leget, [37](#).

leiten (*pret. leite*), *wv.* to lead, [5](#), [11](#), [30](#), [32.4](#), [90](#).

leitestërne, *wm.* loadstar.

lenge, *sf.* length, [10](#).

lère, *sf.* teaching, instruction, precept, guidance, advice; saying.

lëren (**lërn**), *wv.* teach, [5](#), [11](#), [17](#).

lërnen, *wv.* learn.

leschen, *sv.* IV, be extinguished, go out, [11](#), [82](#).

leschen, *wv.* extinguish, put out.

lësen, *sv.* V, gather, read, [33](#), [83](#).

leste, *aj.* last, [9.5](#), [23.1](#).

lesterlich, *aj.* disgraceful, ignominious.

letzen, *wv.* injure, prejudice; forsake.

lezzeste, **leste**, *aj.* last, [59](#).

liden, *sv.* I, suffer, endure, [30](#), [76](#).

liebe, *sf.* love, joy.

lieben, *wv.* give pleasure, gladden; present with.

liegen, *sv.* II, lie, tell a lie, [5](#), [78](#).

lieht, *sn.* light, [16](#).

lieht, *aj.* bright;
av. liehte.

liep (**-bes**), *aj.* dear, pleasant, friendly, [5](#), [11](#);
sn. what is lovable; dearest joy; lover.

liet (**-des**), *sn.* song, poem.

ligen (**liggen**, **licken**), *sv.* V, lie, lie down, [14.2](#), [31.3](#), [84](#).

lihen, *sv.* I, lend, [12](#), [76](#).

lihte, *aj.* light, easy, worthless;
av. easily, perhaps;
lihte noch, still now-a-days.

lin, **line**, *swf.* window with balcony.

linde, *wf.* linden-tree.

lip (**-bes**), *sm.* life, body, person, [33](#).

list, *sm.* prudence, wisdom, advice; means, art; artfulness, cunning.

list = **liges(t)**, [37](#).

lit (**-des**), *sn.* limb, member.

lit = **liget**, [37](#).

liuhten, *wv.* light, shine, shed lustre, [16](#).

liut, *sn.* folk, people, army, [5](#), [11](#).

liuten, *wv.* ring.

liuterlich, *av.* expressly, quite, entirely.

Liutpolt, *pn.* Leopold of Austria.

lobelich, *aj.* praiseworthy.

loben, *wv.* praise, [92](#).

lobesam, *aj.* praiseworthy, glorious.

loch (*pl.* **löcher**), *sn.* hole, [5](#), [10](#), [31.3](#).

lœsen, *wv.* loose, [33](#), [90](#).

lôn, *sm.* pay, reward.

lônen, *wv.* reward.

lop (**-bes**), *smn.* praise, glorification; price.

lôsen, *wv.* be rid, released of;
hin ze einem lôsen, flatter.

lôt, *sn.* weight.

lœufel, *sm.* runner, [5](#), [10](#).

loufen, *sv.* VII, run, [5](#), [11](#), [87](#).

lougen, *sn.* a denying, denial;
âne lougen, truly.

loup (*pl.* **lœuber**), *sn.* foliage, leaf, [5](#), [10](#), [11](#).

lûchen, *sv.* II, shut, [80](#).

lücke, *swf.* gap, hole, [31.3](#).

luft, *smf.* air, firmament.

luoder, *sn.* bait, [46](#).

lût, *aj.* loud;

lüt wërden (*c. gen.*), give to understand, mention, be heard.

lüte, *av.* aloud, loudly.

lüter, *aj.* clear, bright, [9.2](#);

av. **lüterliche**.

lützel, *aj.* and *av.* little, small, [31.2](#), [58](#);

lützel ieman, nobody, no one;

as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.*, little.

M

mac, see **mügen**.

mâc (-ges), *sm.* relation.

machen, *wv.* make.

mære, *sn.* story, tidings, report.

mære, *aj.* known, renowned, [10](#).

magedin, *sn.* maid, maiden, [8](#).

magen, **megen**, see **mugen**.

maget (*pl.* **mägede**, **megde**), *sf.* girl, maiden, [5](#), [10](#), [37](#), [49](#).

maht (*pl.* **mähte**), *sf.* strength, power, might, [5](#), [11](#).

mahtu = **maht dū**.

mālen, *wv.* paint, draw.

maln, *sv.* VI, grind, [85](#).

man, *sm.* man, [3](#), [32.1](#), [45](#);

pr. one, [71](#).

manbære, *aj.* marriageable.

māne, *wm.* moon.

manen, *wv.* urge on, remind, admonish.

manic, **manec (manc)**, *aj.* many, much, [8](#);

pr. many a, [71](#);

maneger hande, **slahte**, or **leie**, in many ways, manifoldly;

maneger vil, very many.

manicvalt, *aj.* manifold, variegated.

manlich, *aj.* manly, brave, [5](#), [10](#).

mantel, *sm.* mantle, [42](#).

manunge, *sf.* exhortation, admonition.

marc, *sf.* half pound of gold or silver.

marder, *sm.* marten; skin of a marten.

market, *sm.* market, [9.2](#).

marter, *sf.* martyr; torture.

māze, *sf.* measure, manner; moderation, propriety, fitness;

ze einer māze, little, moderate;

ze māze, fairly, sufficiently;

ze rēhter māze, to the right length.

mē, **mēre**, *aj.* and *av.* more, further, [5](#), [17](#), [39](#), [61](#);

as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.* more.

meie, *wm.* May; spring of the year, [35](#).

meien, *wv.* become May; be joyful, make merry.

meier (meiger), *sm.* farmer.

meierin, *sf.* farmer's wife.

meinen, *wv.* mean, mean well, have in view; cause.

meist, **meiste**, *aj.* and *av.* most, greatest, [58](#), [61](#).

meister, *sm.* master.

meisterschaft, *sf.* skill in an art, mastery, order.

meit = **maget**, [37](#).

meizen, *sv.* VII, cut, [87](#).

mël (-wes), *sn.* meal, [36](#), [46](#).

mēlden, *wv.* announce, make known; betray.

mēldunge, *sf.* announcement, [8](#).

Meljahkanz, *pn.*

mēlken, *sv.* III, milk.

mensch(e), *wsmn.* man ('homo').

menschenbluot, *sn.* human blood.

menschlich, *aj.* human.

mer, *sn.* sea.

mère, see **mē**.

mēren, *wv.* increase.

mērer, **mēr(r)e**, *aj.* more, [58](#).

merken (*pret.* **markte**), *wv.* observe, perceive, understand.

merze, *wm.* March.

mēsse, *sf.* mass;
mēssezīt, *sf.* time for mass.

mēte, *sm.* mead, [43](#).

mettīne, *sf.* matins, primes.

mēzzen, *sv.* V, measure, [32.1](#), [32.4](#), [83](#).

mēzzer, *sn.* knife.

micel, *aj.* great;
micels, *av.* by far, [55](#), [58](#).

mīden, *sv.* I, avoid, shun, do without, [30](#), [76](#).

miete, *sf.* pay, reward, present, [5](#), [11](#).

milch, *sf.* milk, [9.1](#).

milt (-des), *aj.* generous;
av. **miltliche**, **milteclīche**.

milte, *aj.* generous, bounteous.

milte, *sf.* liberality, generosity; grace, favour.

min, *av.* less, [61](#).

mīn, *pr.* my, [67](#).

minne, *sf.* love; loving memory, remembrance.

minneclīch, *aj.* dear, lovely, loving, kind.

minnen, *wv.* love, value, [92](#).

minner, **minre**, **min**, *aj.* and *av.* less, [9.3](#), [57](#), [58](#);
as indecl. sb. with *gen.* less.

minnest, **min(ne)ste**, *aj.* and *av.* least, [9.5](#), [57](#), [58](#), [61](#).

mirs = **mir** **ēs**.

miselsuht, *sf.* leprosy.

mislich, *aj.* sundry, uneven, different.

misselingen, *sv.* III, not to succeed.

missesagen, *wv.* deceive, lie.

missetāt, *sf.* misdeed, offence.

missewende, *sf.* mistake, fault, blot.

mist, *sm.* dung, dirt.

mit, **mite**, *prep.* and *av.* with, by, through, [9.6](#);
mit sorgen, sorrowfully;
mit triuwen, faithful, faithfully;
mit willen, gladly, willingly;
mit witze, reasonably, sensibly, cleverly, prudently, wisely;
mit zūhten, politely.

mitte, *aj.* middle;
av. **mitten**.

morgen (morne), *sm.* morning, [42](#);
dēs morgens, in the morning.

mortlich, *aj.* murderous;
av. **mortliche**.

mortmeile, *aj.* blood-stained, blood-guilty.

motte, *swf.* moth, [24](#).

müedinc, *sm.* unhappy man, [8](#).

müelich, *aj.* and *av.* painful, troublesome.

müen (müejēn, müewēn), *wv.* torment, trouble, distress, grieve, [35](#), [90](#).

müeterlich, *aj.* motherly.

müeterlin, *sn.* little mother, [10](#).

müezen, *pret.-pres.* (*pres. sing.* **muoz**, *pret.* **muoste**, **muose**), must, [28](#), [93](#).

müezic, *aj.* idle, at leisure.

müg(e)lich, *aj.* possible.

mügen, **mugen**, **magen**, **megen** (*pres. sing.* **mac**, *pret.* **mohte**, *pret. subj.* **möhte**), *pret.-pres.* may, can, [10](#), [11](#), [28](#), [93](#).

mugge, mügge (mucke, mücke), *wf.* midge, fly, [10 note 3](#), [20](#).
mül, *sf.* mill.
mül, *sn.* mule.
münich, *sm.* monk.
münster, *sn.* minster.
munt (-des), *sm.* mouth.
muot, *sm.* sense, mind, spirits, mood, feeling, courage, disposition, sentiment;
rīches muotes wërden, be in good spirits.
muoten, *wv. c. gen.* desire, long for.
muoter, *sf.* mother, [10](#), [11](#), [49](#).

N

nac (-ckes), *sm.* back part of the head.
nāch, *prep.* after, according to, on account of, at, for, to, [34](#);
nach dēm guote, about wealth *or* money;
nāch ēren, honourably;
nāch sīnen beinen, made to fit his legs;
nāch wünsche, to perfection, all that one could wish for;
vīl nāch, nearly.
nacket, *aj.* naked.
nagel, *sm.* nail, [9.2](#), [44](#).
nagen, *sv.* VI, gnaw, [85](#).
nāhe (nāch), *av.* near, nigh, [34](#);
nāhe tragen, take to heart;
nāhe gān, go closely, touch;
nāhen, near by.
nāhen, *wv.* draw near, come near, approach, be near.
nāhgebūre, *wm.* neighbour.
naht, *sf.* night, [19](#), [49](#);
av. **nahtes**, by night.
nahtigale, nahtegal(e), *sf.* nightingale.
nam(e), *wm.* name, position, [3](#), [9.1](#), [9.4](#).
namen, *wv.* name, [92](#).
napf, *sm.* basin, [31](#).
nar, *sf.* food, [48](#).
nāt, *sf.* seam.
naz (-zzes), *aj.* wet, [31.3](#).
ne, n', *neg. particle*, generally used before the verb with and without **niht**, *not*, [108](#).
nēbel, *sm.* fog, mist,
nehein, *pr.* no, none, [71](#).
neigen, *wv.* bow, bend down.
neizwër, *pr.* anyone, [70](#).
nēmen, *sv.* IV, take;
c. dat. pers. take away, rob, [5](#), [7](#), [10](#), [11](#), [12](#), [14.2](#), [74](#), [82](#).
nennen, *wv.* name, mention the name of, [32.2](#), [40](#), [90](#).
nern (nerigen, nerjen), *wv.* nourish, rescue, keep alive, *refl.* subsist on, [9.1](#), [30](#), [35](#), [90](#).
nest, nēst, *sn.* nest, [11](#).
netze, *sn.* net, [46](#).
netzen, *wv.* make wet, [31.3](#).
nēve, *wm.* nephew, [33](#).
nīden, *sv.* I, hate, envy, [76](#).
nider, *av.* down;
sich nider lazen, settle, establish oneself.
nīdetāt, *sf.* spiteful action.
nie, *av.* never.
nieman, niemen, *pr.* nobody, no one, [71](#).
niemër (niemer, nimer, nimmer), *av.* never.
niender, *av.* by no means.
niene, *av.* not, not at all.
niesen, *sv.* II, sneeze, [78](#).
nieten (refl. with gen.), *wv.* be eager *or* zealous for.
niezen = geniezen.

niftel, *sf.* niece, [33](#).
niht, nieht, niet, *av.* not;
pr. nothing, [71](#);
indecl. sb. c. gen. nothing.
nine = **niene**, not at all.
nīt (-des), *sm.* hatred, anger, hostility.
niun, *num.* nine, [62](#).
niunte (-de), *num.* ninth, [62](#).
niunzēhen, *num.* nineteen, [62](#).
niunzēhende, *num.* nineteenth, [62](#).
niunzic (-ec), *num.* ninety, [62](#).
niunzigeste, ninetieth, [62](#).
niuwan (niwan, niuwen), *av.* nothing but, only;
cj. except, except that.
niuwe, *aj.* new, [16 note, 55](#).
niuwet, *av.* not.
noch, *av.* still;
noch en noch, neither—nor.
Norgāls, *pn.* the country belonging to Herzelojde.
nōt, *sf.* need, danger, trouble, distress.
nōthaft, *aj.* needy, poor,
nōtic, *aj.* in distress, hasty.
nōtnunft, *sf.* abduction by violence.
nū (nu), *av.* now;
nu wol dan, well then be off there!
nutz (nuz), *sm.* use, advantage.
nütze, *aj.* useful.
nutzen, nützen, *wv.* to use, [10 note 3](#).

O

ob, obe, op, *prep.* and *av.* over, above;
conj. if, in case that, whether, [9.6](#).
oben (e), *av.* from above, above.
ober, *aj.* upper, [59](#).
oberste, oberist, oberest, *aj.* highest, uppermost, [8, 59](#).
oder, ode, *conj.* or.
offen, *aj.* and *av.* open, [23.1](#).
offenbāre, *av.* openly.
ofte, *av.* often.
ohse, *wm.* ox.
opfer, *sn.* offering.
orden, *sm.* order, rule; rank;
rīters orden, knightly order.
ordenunge, *sf.* order, rule.
ōre, *wn.* ear, [5, 11, 50](#).
op = ob.
Österrīch, *pn.* Austria.
ot, see **ēht**.
ouch, ōch, *av.* also; henceforward.
ouge, *wn.* eye, [3, 5, 11, 50](#).
ougen, *wv.* show, [10, 90](#).
ougenweide, *sf.* delight of the eyes, sight, appearance.
ouwē, *sf.* water; meadow, [10](#).
owē, ouwē, ōwī, *interj.* woe! alas! ah!;
owē mir mīnes leides! alas! for my grief;
ōwī wan, used to express a wish: would that;
owē dēs, alas for that!
ōwol, *interj.* well!

P

palas, *sn.* hall.

paradys, *sn.* paradise.
pfaffe, *wm.* priest.
pfeller, pfellel, *sm.* carpet, silk cloth.
pfennic, pfenninc (-ges), *sm.* penny, [29](#).
pfert (-des), *sn.* horse.
pflēge, *sf.* care, fostering.
pflēgen (phlēgen), *sv.* V, be accustomed, use, practise, care for, [83](#).
pfluoc, phluoc (-ges), *sm.* plough; ploughman.
pfunt, *sn.* pound, [23.2](#).
phat (-des), *smn.* path, footway.
phel (phelle) = pfeller.
Philip, Philippes (dat. Philippe), *pn.* Philip.
phlēger, *sm.* guardian, protector.
pin = bin.
pīnen (with **sich** and **ūf**), *wv.* exert oneself for.
plān, smf., plāne, *sf.* plain, open space, meadow.
planēte, *wm.* planet.
porte, *sf.* door, gate.
portenære, *sm.* porter, door-keeper.
prēdige, *wf.* sermon.
prīs, *sm.* praise, renown, reputation; price.
prīsen, *wv.* value, praise, extol.
prophēte, *wm.* prophet.
prüstelīn, *sn.* breast, chest.

Q

quāle (kāle), *sf.* torture, [36](#).
quēc (kēc), *aj.* quick, alive, [19](#), [36](#).
quēden, *sv.* V, say, [19](#), [36](#).
quērder (korder, körper), *smn.* bait, [36](#).
quicken (kücken), *wv.* enliven, [36](#).
quīst = quides(t), [37](#).

R

rabe, *wm.* raven, [31.1](#).
rāche, *sf.* revenge, punishment.
ragen, *wv.* strike, knock, hit.
rappe, *wm.* raven, [31.1](#).
rasch (rasche), *aj.* quick, [55](#).
rat (-des), *sn.* wheel, [47](#).
rāt, *sm.* (*pl.* **ræte**), advice, care, resolution;
rāt wërden, be helped.
rāten, *sv.* VII, advise, devise, [87](#).
rē (-wes), *smn.* corpse; bier, hearse, [42](#), [46](#).
rēchen, *sv.* IV, avenge, punish.
rēde, *sf.* speech, answer, story, saying.
rēgen, *sm.* rain, [42](#).
rēht, *aj.* and *sn.* right, proper, just; right, duty, law.
rēhte, *av.* rightly, properly; very.
reine, rein, *aj.* pure, spotless, perfect, [55](#).
reise, *sf.* journey, march.
reizen, *wv.* irritate; entice, allure.
rennen, *wv.* run, [90](#).
ribbalīn, *sn.* foot-covering, shoe.
rīben, *sv.* I, rub, [76](#).
rīch, rīche, *aj.* powerful, mighty, noble, great, fine, rich, free, [55](#).
rīche, *sn.* kingdom.
rīcheit, *sf.* wealth, power.
rīchen, *wv.* make rich, enrich, present with.

rīchsen, *wv.* rule, [9.2](#).
riechen, *sv.* II, smell, [78](#).
rīfe, *wm.* hoar-frost.
rigel, *sm.* bolt, bar.
rihten, *wv.* put right, confirm, judge;
refl. get up.
rinc (-ges), *sm.* ring.
ringe, *aj.* easy, light, small; consumed.
ringen, *sv.* III, strive, struggle; busy oneself, wrestle;
ringen nāch, strive for *or* after.
rinnen, *sv.* III, run, [20](#), [31](#), [32.1](#), [81](#).
rint (*pl.* **rinder**), *sn.* cow, heifer.
rīsen, *sv.* I, fall, [30](#), [76](#).
rīten, *sv.* I, ride, [76](#).
rīter, **ritter**, *sm.* rider; knight, the name of knight.
rīterlich, *aj.* knightly.
rīterschaft, *sf.* knighthood, customs and manners of knights.
ritterlichen, *av.* in knightly manner.
riuschen, *wv.* rush, move noisily.
riuten, *wv.* root out, clear the land, bring the land into cultivation.
riuwe, *sf.* sadness, grief, pity, regret, [16 note](#).
riuwen, *wv.* grieve, grieve for, regret.
riuwen, *sv.* II, pain, grieve, regret, [16 note](#), [78](#).
riuwic, *aj.* sorrowful, repentant.
rivier, *sm.* brook, stream.
rocke, **rogge**, *wm.* rye, [31.1](#).
Rōme, *pn.* Rome.
rōr, *sn.* reed.
ros, *sn.* horse.
rōt, *aj.* red, [19](#).
rouben, *wv.* rob.
rouch, *sm.* smoke.
roufen, *wv.* pluck, pull up, pull at, lug;
refl. tear *or* pull out one's hair.
roup (-bes), *sm.* robbery;
roubes, *av.* by robbery.
rūch, *aj.* raw; coarse.
rucke, **rügge**, *swm.* back.
ruejen, *wv.* row, [90](#).
rüemen, *wv.* praise, commend.
rueren (*pret.* **ruorte**), *wv.* drive, urge on;
with **ros** understood: run.
rūm, *sm.* room, [11](#).
rūmen, *wv.* make room, [10](#), [40](#).
ruochen, *wv.* trouble oneself about a thing, observe;
with *gen.* deign, will, wish.
ruofen, *sv.* VII, call, [5](#), [11](#), [87](#).

S

sā, **sān**, *av.* presently, at once, forthwith, immediately, quickly.
sache, *sf.* thing.
sactuoch, *sn.* sacking, sackcloth.
sæjen, **sæwen**, **sæn**, sow, [10](#), [35](#), [90](#).
sælde, *sf.* happiness, good fortune, excellence, blessedness, [9.2](#).
sælic, **sælec (-ges)**, *aj.* blessed, happy, [7](#), [8](#).
sælikeit, *sf.* blessedness.
sage, *sf.* saying, statement, report;
nāch sage, by hear-say.
sagen, *wv.* say, tell, [37](#), [92](#);
sagen mære, relate what has happened.
sal, *sm.* room, hall; house.

salben, *wv.* anoint.

Salomōn, *sm.* Solomon.

salz, *sn.* salt, [23.2](#).

salzen, *sv.* VII, salt, [87](#).

same, **sam**, *av.* so, as, like, just as, even as, [69](#).

samīt, *sm.* velvet.

samt, *av.* together.

sān, see **sā**.

sanc (**-ges**), *sm.* song, singing.

sanfte, *av.* softly, slowly, pleasantly, [60](#).

sant (**-des**), *sm.* sand, [42](#).

sant(e), *aj.* holy; holy one.

sarc, *sm.* coffin.

sarken, **serken**, *wv.* put into the coffin.

sāt, *sf.* seed, [5](#), [11](#).

satz(e), *pret.* of **setzen**.

sāze, *sf.* ambush, trap, snare.

sazte, *pret.* of **setzen**.

schāchære, *sm.* robber.

schade, *wm.* injury, loss.

schaden (*pret.* **schadete**, **schāte**), *wv.* injure, harm.

schāf, *sn.* sheep.

schaffen, *sv.* VI, create, exercise, institute, [85](#).

schaffen, *wv.* do, perform, provide.

schal (**-lles**), *sm.* sound, noise, loud tone; singing.

schalchaft, *aj.* malicious, mischievous.

schallen, *wv.* be noisy; bluster; exult, boast, swagger.

schame, *wf.* shame.

schāmelich, *aj.* shameful, [10](#).

schamen, *wv.* shame;

c. gen. be ashamed, [9.4](#).

schande, *sf.* disgrace, disgracefulness, shamefulness, shameful *or* disgraceful act.

schapel, *sn.* garland, [46](#).

schar, *sf.* crowd, flock, [48](#).

scharpf, *aj.* sharp.

schart, *aj.* jagged, hacked, hewn, battered.

schate (*gen.* **schat(e)wes**), *sm.* shade, shadow, [36](#), [43](#).

schaz (*gen.* **schatzes**), *sm.* treasure, [19](#), [23.2](#).

schedeliche, *av.* injuriously.

scheiden, *sv.* VII, sever, separate, deprive; go away, [87](#);

sich scheiden, come to an end, be decided.

schēlch (*gen.* **schēlhes**), *aj.* askew, [34](#).

schelle, *wf.* little bell.

schēlten, *sv.* III, abuse, revile, mock, [81](#);

also as *sn.*

schemelich, *aj.* disgraceful.

schepfen (*pret.* **schuof**, *pp.* **geschaffen**), *sv.* VI, create, [23.2](#), [28](#), [31.3](#).

schepfære, **schepfer**, *sm.* creator, [8](#).

schērn, *sv.* IV, shear, [82](#).

schicken (with *acc.*), *wv.* become, suit, fit.

schieben, *sv.* II, shove, [78](#).

schiere, *av.* quickly, soon.

schiezen, *sv.* II, shoot;

sn. shooting, [10 note 3](#), [78](#).

schif (**-ffes**), *sn.* ship, [19](#), [32.1](#).

schilt (**-des**), *sm.* shield, protection;

schildes ambet, knight-service, chivalry.

schimpfen, *wv.* make fun of, jest;

also as *sn.*

schīn, *aj.* visible, clear;

schīn tuon, make clear, show;

sm. splendour.

schīnen, *sv.* I, shine, become evident or manifest, [76](#).

schirmen, *wv. c. dat.* protect.

schiuhen, *wv.* fear, shun.

schoende, *sf.* beauty.

schoene, *aj.* beautiful, fine, [3](#), [5](#), [9.2](#), [55](#), [60](#).

schøene, *sf.* beauty, [3](#), [48](#).

schøenen, *wv.* make beautiful.

schōne, *av.* beautifully, [60](#).

schouwen, *wv.* see, behold, look, inspect, survey.

schrēcken, *sv.* IV, frighten, [82](#).

schrībære, *sm.* scribe, [8](#).

schrīben, *sv.* I, write, [5](#), [76](#).

schrīen (scriēn), *sv.* I, cry, cry out, scream; croak, [77](#);
also as *sn.*

schrift, *sf.* writing (Bible).

schrīn, *sm.* box.

schrinden, *sv.* III, split, [81](#).

schrit, *sm.* step, [44](#).

schrunde, *wf.* scratch, tear, slit.

schūften, *wv.* gallop, canter.

schulde, *sf.* reason, cause;
von welhen schulden, wherefore.

schuldic (-ec), *aj.* guilty, [10 note 1](#);
schuldic sīn, owe.

schuoch (*gen.* **schuohes**), *sm.* shoe, [34](#).

schupfen, schūpfen, *wv.* push, [10 note 3](#).

schuz (-tzes), *sm.* protection.

se = sie.

sē (-wes), *sm.* sea, lake, [3](#), [42](#).

sēgenen, *wv.* bless, [90](#).

sēhen, *sv.* V, see, look, [9.4 note](#), [34](#), [74 note](#), [83](#).

sēhs, *num.* six, [62](#).

sēhste, *num.* sixth, [62](#).

sēh(s)zēhen, *num.* sixteen, [62](#).

sēh(s)zehēnde, *num.* sixteenth, [62](#).

sēh(s)zic (-ec), *num.* sixty, [62](#).

sēh(s)zigeste, *num.* sixtieth, [62](#).

seist = sages(t), [37](#).

seit = saget, [37](#).

seite, *wm.* string.

seite = sagete.

seitenspil, *sn.* playing of stringed instrument.

sele, *sf.* soul, [5](#), [11](#), [17](#), [48](#).

seln, *wv.* hand over, [90](#).

sēlp (-bes), *pr.* self.

sēlten, *av.* seldom.

sēltsæne, *aj.* rare, strange.

senden (*pret.* **sante**), *wv.* send, [32.3](#), [40](#), [90](#).

senede, sende, *pp.* of **senen**, painfully longing, yearning, love-sick, [29](#).

senen, *wv. refl.* fret oneself, be sick at heart.

senfte, *sf.* softening.

senfte, *aj.* soft, gentle, tender, mild, easy; quiet, [55](#), [60](#).

senften, *wv.* appease, soften.

senken, *wv.* sink, [19](#), [90](#).

sēr, *snm.* pain; grief, trouble; sore.

sēre, *av.* sorely, violently; very.

setzen (*pret.* **satzte**), *wv.* put, set, place, appoint, [19](#), [23.1](#), [31.3](#), [90](#).

si, sī, siu, sie, *pr.* she, [65](#).

siben, *num.* seven, [62](#).

sibende, *num.* seventh, [62](#).
sibenzēhen, *num.* seventeen, [62](#).
sibenzēhende, *num.* seventeenth, [62](#).
sibenzic (-ec), seventy, [62](#).
sibenzigste, seventieth, [62](#).
sich, *refl. pr.* himself, themselves, [66](#).
sicherheit, *sf.* assurance.
sicherlich(e), *av.* certainly, surely, assuredly, [8](#).
sīde, *sf.* silk.
sider, *av.* since, afterwards.
siech, *aj.* sick, ill, [5](#).
siecheit, *sf.*, **siechtuom**, *sm.* sickness.
sieden, *sv.* II, seethe, [12](#), [18](#), [78](#).
Sīfrit, *pn.*, [54](#).
sige (sic), *sm.* victory, [43](#).
sīgen, *sv.* I, sink, [76](#).
sigenunft, *sf.* victory.
sīhte, *aj.* shallow.
silber, *sn.* silver.
sim = si im.
sin, *sm.* sense, mind, feeling; courage.
sīn, *pr.* his;
sīn sēlbes, of himself, [5](#), [11](#), [67](#).
sīn, *anom. v.* be, [97](#).
sin = si in.
sincwīse, *sf.* song.
singen, *sv.* III, sing;
also as *sn.* song, lay, [10 note 2](#), [33](#), [81](#).
sinken, *sv.* III, sink, [23.2](#), [81](#).
sinne, *sf.* sense, mind;
ze sinne wider kōmen, recover consciousness, become conscious again.
sinneclīch, *aj.* sensible, reasonable.
sinnelōs, *aj.* unconscious.
sinnen, *sv.* III, reflect, [81](#).
sint = sīt.
sippe (sibbe), *sf.* consanguinity, relationship, [26](#), [31.3](#).
sīt (sīd, sint), *av.* and *conj.* afterwards, since, because.
site, *sm.* custom, habit; bearing, demeanour, behaviour, [43](#).
sīte, *swf.* side.
sitzen (*pret.* **saz**, *pp.* **gesēzzen**), sit, [14.2](#), [23.2](#), [31.3](#), [84](#).
siz = sī ēz.
slac (-ges), *sm.* blow; misfortune, [44](#).
slāf, *sm.* sleep.
slāfen, *sv.* VII, sleep, [5](#), [11](#), [19](#), [23.1](#), [74 note](#), [87](#).
slahen, *sv.* VI, beat, strike, slay, [10](#), [30](#), [85](#).
slahte, *sf.* manner; race.
slēht, *aj.* straight; straight-forward, honest.
sliezen, *sv.* II, close, shut.
smac (-ckes), *sm.* taste, smell.
smācheit, *sf.* shameful treatment.
smæhe, *aj.* little, despicable, disgusting.
smal, *aj.* small, little.
smecken, *wv.* taste, [90](#).
smēr (-wes), *smn.* fat, [36](#), [47](#).
smērze, *wm.* pain, [19](#).
smiegen, *sv.* II, bend, incline; press close.
smielen, *wv.* smile.
smirwen, *wv.* smear, [36](#).
smit (-des), *sm.* smith, metal worker, goldsmith.
smitte, *swf.* smithy, [24](#).

snē (-wes), *sm.* snow, [17](#), [36](#), [42](#).
snël (-lles), *aj.* quick, eager, alert; blithe.
snëlheit, *sf.* haste, quickness.
snīden, *sv.* I, cut, injure, wound, [11](#), [12](#), [17](#), [30](#), [76](#).
snit, *sm.* cut, slice, [44](#).
snuor (*pl.* **snüere**), *sf.* string.
sō, so, *av.* and *conj.* as, so, if, whereas, on the other hand, thus, as it was, [69](#).
solch, sölch (solich), *pr.* such, of such a nature, [71](#).
soldenære, *sm.* hired soldier, mercenary.
solt (-des), *sm.* pay.
Soltāne, *pn.*
soltu = solt dū.
son = so ne.
sorge, *swf.* care, grief, sorrow.
sorgelōs, *aj.* free from cares.
sorgen, *wv.* be anxious, fear, dread.
spāhe, *av.* elegantly, neatly.
spalten, *sv.* VII, split, [87](#).
spān, *sm.* chip, shaving; notched stick, tally; degree of relationship.
spanen, *sv.* VI, entice, [85](#).
spange, *swf.* clasp, buckle.
spannen, *sv.* VII, span, [87](#).
sparn, *wv.* spare, forbear.
spēhen, *wv.* look at, observe.
spēr, *sn.* spear, lance.
spiegel, *sm.* mirror, looking-glass; model, pattern.
spiegelglas, *sn.* lovely image, picture.
spil, *sn.* game, play; joke, fun; pleasure, delight.
spiln (*pres. part.* **spilende**, **spilede**), *wv.* play; glitter, glisten, [90](#).
spinnen, *sv.* III, spin, [81](#).
spīse, *sf.* food.
spīwen, *sv.* I, vomit, [17](#), [77](#).
spore, spor, *wm.* spur.
spot, *sm.* scoff, scorn, mockery; joke, fun;
āne spot, sincerely, candidly.
spotten, *wv.* (with *gen.*), mock, scoff at, scorn.
sprēchen, *sv.* IV, speak, say, talk, [9.4 note](#), [19](#), [23.1](#), [82](#).
spreiten, *wv.* spread.
springen, *sv.* III, spring, leap.
stæte, *sf.* duration, continuance, constancy, steadfastness.
stæte, *aj.* constant, firm, steadfast;
av. **stæteclichen**.
stætekeit, stætikeit, *sf.* firmness, constancy.
stahel, *sm.* steel.
stam (-mmes), *sm.* stem; prop, model.
stān, stēn, *sv.* VI, stand; befit, become, suit, [11](#), [86](#), [96](#).
stap (-bes), *sm.* stick, staff.
starc, *aj.* strong, heavy, hard, severe;
av. **starke**.
stat, *sf.* abode, place, spot; opportunity.
state, *sf.* suitable *or* comfortable place; opportunity;
ze staten komen, help.
stēchen, *sv.* IV, prick, [9.4 note](#), [82](#).
stēgreif, *sm.* stirrup.
stein, *sm.* stone, precious stone, grindstone, millstone, [3](#), [17](#).
stēln, *sv.* IV, steal, [9.1](#), [11](#), [74 note](#), [82](#).
stellen, *wv.* place, [90](#).
stērbēn, *sv.* III, die, [10 note 1](#), [81](#);
sn. dying, death.
sterke, *sf.* strength, bravery.
stērne, *wm.* star.

stīc (-ges), *sm.* path, way.
stich, *sm.* stab, thrust.
stīgen, *sv.* I, rise, mount,
stille, *aj.* still, quiet, secret.
stimme, *sf.* voice.
stinken (*pret.* **stanc**), *sv.* III, stink, exhale a disagreeable odour.
stiure, *sf.* gift, tax.
støeren, *wv.* hinder, overthrow, destroy.
stōle, *sf.* stole, surplice.
stolz, *aj.* stately.
stoup (-bes), *sm.* dust.
stōzen, *sv.* VII, push, shove, thrust, [5](#), [11](#), [87](#).
strāfen, *wv.* blame, set right.
strāze, *swf.* way, road,
strēben, *sv.* V, exert oneself, strive.
streng, *aj.* strict, unfriendly.
strīchen, *sv.* I, strike, stroke, rub.
strīt, *sm.* strife, quarrel, fight.
strīteclīchen, *av.* eagerly, zealously.
strīten, *sv.* I, quarrel, fight, strive, [76](#).
strō (-wes), *sn.* straw; blade, stalk, [36](#), [46](#).
strouwen, **strōuwen**, *wv.* strew, [10](#), [36](#).
stūcke, *sn.* piece.
stum, *aj.* dumb, [32.1](#).
stunde, *sf.* hour, time.
stunt, *indecl. fem.* time.
stuol, *sm.* seat of a judge, papal power; throne.
sturm, *sm.* fight, battle.
sū, *sf.* sow, pig, [49](#).
sūeze, *aj.* sweet, lovely, [60](#).
sūeze, *sf.* loveliness, alluring enticement.
sūezen, *wv.* sweeten, [90](#).
sūfen, *sv.* II, gulp down liquids, [80](#).
sūft, *sm.* sigh, groan.
sūgen, *sv.* II, suck, [80](#).
suln, **sūln**, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* **sol**, *pret.* **solte**, should, ought), shall, [40](#), [93](#).
sum, *pr.* any one at all;
pl. some, [71](#).
sumelīch, *pr.* many a, whoever;
pl. some, [71](#).
sūmen, *wv.* tarry, [10](#).
sumer, *sm.* summer, [42](#).
sumerlīch, *aj.* summerlike.
sumerzīt, *sf.* summer time.
sun, *sm.* son, [5](#), [9.4](#), [10](#), [19](#), [44](#).
sūnde, *sf.* sin.
sunder, *prep.* without, against;
sunder spot, seriously, in earnest;
av. **sunderliche(n)**, especially, separately.
sunne, *wmf.* sun.
suochen, *wv.* seek, [90](#).
suone, *sf.* atonement.
suon(e)tac (-ges), *sm.* day of judgement.
suoze, *av.* sweetly, [60](#).
sus (sust), *av.* so, thus, in such a way.
swā, **swar**, *av.* wherever, [69](#).
swach(e), *aj.* worthless, bad.
swacheit, *sf.* dishonour, disgrace.
swachen, *wv.* weaken.
swachlīch, *aj.* weak.

swære, *aj.* painful, sad, unpleasant, burdensome; weighty, heavy, [60](#);
daz swære, such a weight.
swære, *sf.* burden, trouble, grief, sadness.
swanc (-ges, -kes), *sm.* swinging movement, hurling, throwing.
swannen, swanne, *av.* and *conj.* whenever, [69](#).
swar, see **swā**.
swār (swære), *aj.* heavy, [55](#);
av. **swære**, [60](#).
swarz, *aj.* black.
swēben, *wv.* hover, move to and fro.
swēder, *pr.* who of two, [69](#).
swēher, *sm.* father-in-law, [30](#).
sweifen, *sv.* VII, rove, [87](#).
swelch (swel), *pr.* each who, whoever, what sort, whatever, [69](#), [71](#).
swellen, *sv.* III, swell, [81](#).
swenne (see **swannen**), *conj.* whenever, if, whilst, [69](#).
swēr, *pr.* who, whoever, whosoever;
neut. **swaz**, [69](#), [70](#), [71](#).
swern (swerigen, swerjen), *sv.* VI, swear, [35](#), [86](#).
swért, *sn.* sword.
swërtslac (pl. -slege), *sm.* sword-cut.
swester, swēster, *sf.* sister, [11](#), [48](#).
swie, *av.* and *conj.*, as, how, however, howsoever; though, [69](#).
swīgen, *sv.* I, be silent, keep silent, [76](#).
swiger, *sf.* mother-in-law, [30](#).
swimmen, *sv.* III, swim, [31](#), [81](#).
swinde, *aj.* powerful, strong, angry;
av. quickly.
swinden, *sv.* III, vanish, disappear.
swingen, *sv.* III, swing.

T

tac (-ges), *sm.* day, [5](#), [11](#), [33](#), [42](#);
av. **tages**, by day.
tägelich, *aj.* daily, [5](#), [10](#).
tagen, *wv.* become day, dawn.
tagezīt, *sf.* space of a day.
tal (pl. teler), *sn.* dale, [47](#).
tanz, *sm.* dance.
tanzen, *wv.* dance.
tanzwīse, *sf.* a song which is sung to the accompaniment of dancing.
teil, *smn.* portion;
ein teil, something, a little.
teilen, *wv.* divide, distribute.
tief, *aj.* deep, [15](#), [19](#).
tier, *sn.* animal.
tisch, *sm.* table.
tiure, tiuwer, *aj.* and *av.* dear, precious; noble, excellent, [9.3](#), [57](#).
tiuren, tiuwern, *wv.* esteem highly, honour, confer honour.
tiutsch, tiusch, *aj.* German;
tiuschiu zunge, German language, Germany.
tiuvel, *sm.* devil.
tøerisch, tøersch, *aj.* foolish, silly.
tøetlich, *aj.* deadly.
tohter, *sf.* daughter, [10](#), [25](#), [49](#).
tøhterlin, *sn.* little daughter, [10](#).
tor, *sn.* gate, door.
tøre, tōr, *wm.* fool.
tørperheit, *sf.* impoliteness, vulgarity.
tōt, *aj.* dead, [3](#), [25](#), [30](#).
tōt (-des), *sm.* death, [5](#), [11](#), [30](#), [33](#);

in dēm tōde swēben, be on the peril of losing one's life.

tou (-wes), *sn.* dew, [46](#).

toufen, *wv.* baptize, [10](#).

tougen, *sfn.* secret, wonder;
aj. dark, secret;
av. secretly, [55](#).

tougenlich, *aj.* secret;
av. **tougenliche**.

træge, *aj.* slow, weary, lazy;
av. **trāge**.

tragen, *sv.* VI, bear, carry; wear; have, [85](#).

trahen (*pl.* **trehene**), *sm.* drop, tear.

trahten, *wv.* think, strive, [92](#).

trëffen, *sv.* IV, hit, [32](#), [82](#).

treit = **traget**.

trëten, *sv.* V, tread, step, enter, [83](#);
trëten hinder sich, step back.

treten, *wv.* tread, [31.3](#).

triben, *sv.* I, drive; play, carry on, [76](#).

triefen, *sv.* II, drop, drip, [31.1](#), [78](#).

triegen, *sv.* II, deceive, plot, intrigue.

trinken, *sv.* III, drink, [19](#), [81](#).

triuten, *wv.* caress, like, love; greet.

triuwe, *aj.* true, [16 note](#);
sf. fidelity, faithfulness;
mit triuwen (triwen), faithfully.

triuwen, trūwen, *wv.* believe, trust, hope, [16 note](#).

trœstelîn, *sn.* consolation, hope.

trœsten, *wv.* console, comfort; help.

tropfe, *wm.* drop, [31.3](#).

trōst, *sm.* consolation, hope.

troum, *sm.* dream.

troumen, *wv.* dream, [10](#).

trüebe, *aj.* gloomy.

trüebſal, *sn.* gloom, [8](#).

trürec, *aj.* sad;
av. **trürecliche**.

trüren, *wv.* mourn, be sad, downcast;
also *sn.*

trût, *aj.* dear, beloved.

trûtgemahēle, *sf.* bride.

tugen, tügen, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* **touc**, *pret.* **tohte**), be fit for, good for, of use, [93](#).

tugenhaft, *aj.* fit, hearty, noble.

tugent, tugende, *sf.* virtue, good qualities, strength, power, valour, [49](#).

tugentlichen, *av.* with noble demeanour.

tump (-bes), *aj.* inexperienced, silly, young.

tumpheit, *sf.* folly, foolish action; inexperience;
tumpheit walten, show or have great inexperience.

tunkel, *aj.* dark.

tuon, *anom. v.* do, make, form, shape; cause, [94](#);
tuon enblecken, cause to become visible;
ze leide tuon, cause grief, pain, *or* injury to;
wër hât dir getân? who has done anything to you?;
als ein got getân, like a god.

tür, *sf.* door.

Turkentâls, *pn.* one of Parzival's princes.

turren, türren, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* **tar**, *pret.* **torste**), dare, venture, [10](#), [93](#).

tūsenste, *num.* thousandth, [62](#).

tūsent, *num.* thousand, [5](#), [62](#), [64](#).

twahen (*pret.* **twuoc**), *sv.* VI, wash, [85](#).

twërch (*gen.* **twërhes**), askew, [34](#).

twingen, *sv.* III, compel, force, subdue, overcome;
sich twingen lâzen, let oneself be compelled.

übel, *aj.* evil, bad, [55](#), [58](#), [60](#);
av. **übele**.

über, *prep.* over, because of, for.

übergrōz, *aj.* very great.

übergülde, *sn.* gilding, raising of value.

übergulde, *sf.* that which surpasses something else in value.

übermæzlichen, *av.* beyond measure.

übermüete, *sf.* insolence, haughtiness.

übermuot, *sm.* haughtiness, insolence.

übern = **über dën**, [68 note 2](#).

übersëhen, *sv.* V, overlook, not observe.

überstrïten, *sv.* I, gain the victory over, conquer.

übertragen, *sv.* VI, spare, discharge something.

überwinden, *sv.* III, overcome, get over.

ûf, **ûfe**, *prep.* and *av.* up, up to, on, to, upwards, [23.1](#);

ûf genāde, in firm confidence;

ûf die triwe mīn, upon my faith *or* troth;

ûf sliezen, open.

ûfem, **ûfme** = **ûf dēm**, [68 note 2](#).

ûfen = **ûf dën**, [68 note 2](#).

Ulterlec, *pn.*

umbe, **ümbe**, **umb**, **um**, *prep.* and *av.* about, around, upon, for, [10 note 2](#);

dar umbe, therefore;

umbe sust, for nothing;

um waz, why, for what reason;

umbe daz, on account of that, for that, therefore;

umbe gān, turn *or* go round.

umbesliezen, *sv.* II, embrace, surround.

umbevāhen, *sv.* VII, embrace.

unbewollen, *part. aj.* unspotted.

und, **unde**, **unt**, *cj.* and *av.* and; again, on the other hand, [9.6](#), [69](#).

unden, *av.* below, beneath.

under (**undr**), *prep.* under, beneath, between, among;

under in, among themselves;

under wëgen lān, omit;

under stunden, at times, now and then, sometimes;

under wīlen, from time to time, at times, sometimes.

underlāz, *sm.* interruption.

underscheiden, *sv.* VII, relate; explain fully.

undersnīden, *sv.* I, interrupt, intermingle.

understān, *sv.* VI, step in between, hinder.

undertænic, *aj.* humble, subject, submissive.

undertān, *part. aj.* humble, submissive.

underwinden, *sv.* III, *refl.* undertake.

unfuoge (also used as a proper noun), *sf.* unseemliness, indecorum, misconduct; coarseness.

unfuore, *wf.* badness, roughness; wicked mode of life.

ungebære, *sf.* despairing lamentation.

ungebant, *aj.* unbeaten, untrodden.

ungebatten, *aj.* useless, worthless.

ungeborn, *part. aj.* unborn.

ungeburt, *sf.* low birth.

ungefüege, *aj.* very great, powerful; bad, unbecoming, coarse, uncouth, rude;

av. **ungefuoge**.

ungehabe, *sf.* sorrow, grief.

ungeliche, *av.* immeasurably, incomparably.

ungelōnet, *aj.* unrewarded.

ungelouplich, *aj.* incredible.

ungelücke, *sn.* misfortune.

ungemach, *sn.* misfortune, discomfort, sorrow.

ungemüete, *snf.* mourning, grief, sorrow.

ungenāde, *sf.* disfavour, hatred, harm.

ungenæme, *aj.* unpleasant.
ungenësen, *aj.* unhealed, uncured.
ungerihite, *sn.* fault, crime.
ungërne, *av.* unwillingly.
ungesammet, *aj.* not united, not unanimous.
ungeschriben, *part. aj.* that which cannot be written.
ungestalthheit, *sf.* deformity.
ungesunt, (-des), *sm.* sickness, illness.
unhövesch, *aj.* uncourtly, coarse, low, vulgar.
unkraft, *sf.* fainting fit, swoon.
unkunt (**unkuntlich**), *aj.* unknown.
unlange, *av.* in a short time.
unmære, *aj.* not worth mentioning, little observed, worthless, disgusting; undervalued.
unmæzlich, *aj.* immoderate, excessive.
unmāzen, *av.* immeasurably.
unminnen, *wv.* treat in an unloving manner.
unmuezekeit, *sf.* work, trouble.
unmugelich, *aj.* impossible.
unmuoze, *sf.* occupation, restlessness.
unnāch, *av.* by no means.
unnöt, *sf.* without danger *or* need.
unrewert = **unerwert**, *part. aj.* unprohibited.
unriuwecliche, *av.* without trouble *or* care.
unsælekeit, *sf.* unhappiness; misfortune.
unsælic (-ec), *aj.* unhappy, cursed.
unschulde, *sf.* innocence.
unschuldigen, *wv.* proclaim one's innocence.
unsegelich, *aj.* unspeakable.
unsenfte, *aj.* painful, hard.
unser, *pr.* our, [7](#), [67](#).
unstæte, *aj.* inconstant, fickle.
unstæte, *sf.* inconstancy, fickleness.
untriuwe, *sf.* faithlessness, deceit.
untrösten, *wv.* dishearten, discourage.
untröst, *sm.* despondency, discouragement.
untugent, *sf.* lack of good training.
unversunnen, *pp.* unconscious.
unvrō, **unfrō**, *aj.* unhappy, sad, mournful.
unwandelbære, *aj.* steadfast, unchangeable.
unwendic (-ec), *aj.* unchangeable.
unwërt, *sm.* unworthiness, contempt for, scorn.
unwīp, (-bes), *sn.* bad woman; unwomanly creature; unworthy the name of Weib.
unwīse, *sf.* false tone *or* sound; bad style.
unze, **unz**, *prep.* and *conj.* till, until, up to, down to, to;
unz her, hitherto;
unz enmitten an, right down to.
unzerworht, *aj.* undivided, undissected, not cut up.
Uote, *pn.* [54](#).
üppic, *aj.* unnecessary, superfluous; proud.
ūz, *prep.* and *av.* out, out of, of, from;
ūzen, *av.*;
ūzerwelt, select, chosen.
ūzer, *prep.* out of, from.
ūzreise, *sf.* marching, going out *or* off; departure; song sung by knights on the march.

V (F)

vadem, *sm.* thread, [9.2](#), [42](#).
vāhen, **fāhen** (**vān**), *sv.* VII, catch, seize, take, [29](#), [30](#), [38](#), [87](#).
val (-wes), *aj.* yellow, [36](#).
vallen, *sv.* VII, fall, fall down, fall to one's lot, [32.4](#), [87](#).

valsch, *aj.* false, deceitful.
valsch, *sm.* fault, spot, impurity, deceit;
valsches laz, free from deceit *or* falseness.
valten, *sv.* VII, fold, [87](#).
vancnüsse, *sf.* captivity, [8](#).
var, vare (-wes), *aj.* coloured; formed, looking.
vāren, *wv.* place behind, watch, lie in wait.
varn, *sv.* VI, go, fare, betake oneself, [5](#), [10](#), [74 note](#), [85](#);
varndeꝝ guot, movable property.
vart, *sf.* way, march, journey.
varwe, *sf.* colour, form, appearance.
vaste, *av.* fast, quickly, strongly, firmly; very.
vater, *sm.* (*pl.* **veter, väter**), father, [11](#), [19](#), [45](#).
väterlich, *aj.* fatherly, [10](#).
väterlīn, *dim.* of **vater**, [5](#), [10](#).
vazzen, *wv.* seize, take, gather.
vēhten, *sv.* IV, fight, [82](#).
veile, *aj.* cheap, purchasable.
vēl (-iles), *sn.* hide, skin, [32.1](#).
vellen, *wv.* fell, kill, [90](#).
vels, *sww.* rock, [11](#).
velschen, *wv.* falsify; make faithless.
vēlt (-des), *sn.* field.
venster, *sn.* window, [46](#).
verbērgen, *sv.* III, hide, conceal.
verbērn, *sv.* IV, spare, abstain from, forbear, avoid, keep from, give up.
verbieten, *sv.* II, forbid, hinder, prevent, obstruct; ward off.
verdagen, *wv.* keep secret, conceal.
verdērbēn, perish, spoil, destroy, [81](#).
verdērbnisse, *sn.* destruction, [8](#).
verdienen, *wv.* deserve, earn.
verdriezen (*impers. c. gen.*), *sv.* III, grieve, fret, vex.
verdringen, *sv.* III, crowd out, suppress, displace, push on one side.
vereinen, *wv. refl.* unite.
verenden, *wv.* end.
vergēben, *sv.* V, poison, infect.
vergēlten, *sv.* III, repay, requite.
vergēzzen, *sv.* V, forget, [83](#).
vergiezen, *sv.* II, pour over, sprinkle with water.
verhēln, *sv.* IV, conceal.
verhouwen (*pret.* **-hiu** and **-hie**, also weak **-houte**), *sv.* VII, hew in pieces, cut asunder.
verjēhen, *sv.* V, say, tell, relate; give to understand, assure.
verkēren, *wv.* change, turn round; destroy.
verkiesen, *sv.* II, give up, forgo, forget.
verklagen, *wv.* cease to mourn, bear with patience.
verkrenken, *wv.* destroy.
verlāzen (verlān), *sv.* VII, leave off, forsake.
verleiten, *wv.* lead astray.
verleschen, *sv.* IV, become extinguished, extinguish.
verliesen (vliesen), *sv.* II, lose, [78](#).
verligen, *sv.* V, miss through sleeping too long, over-sleep.
verlust, *sm.* loss.
vermīden, (*pp.* **vermiten**), *sv.* I, avoid, omit, not to take place, keep aloof from.
vermischen, *wv.* mix, mingle.
vernēmen, *sv.* IV, perceive, observe, get to know.
vērre, *aj.* and *av.* far, far away, distant, [31](#).
verrihten, *wv.* settle, pass sentence upon.
versagen, *wv.* refuse, deny.
verschaffen, *sv.* VI, do *or* act in a bad manner, spoil, destroy.
verschulden, *wv.* pay back.

versēhen, *sv.* V, observe, recognize;
refl. hope, dread.

versinnen (sich), *sv.* III, arrive at years of discretion;
c. gen. become conscious of.

versmæhelic, *aj.* disgraceful, ignominious.

versmæhen, *wv.* despise, mock.

versperren (*pret.* **versparte**), *wv.* shut, close.

versprēchen, *sv.* IV, decline, spurn.

verstān (-stēn), *sv.* VI, perceive, understand.

verstōzen, *sv.* VII, drive away.

versūmen, *wv.* neglect, let slip, spoil.

versuochen, *wv.* try, test.

verswern, *sv.* VI, abjure, deny by an oath.

verswīgen, *sv.* I, forbear talking.

verswinden, *sv.* III, disappear, flee.

vertragen, *sv.* VI, endure, bear.

vertrīben, *sv.* I, drive away, make to pass.

vervāhen, verfāhen, *sv.* VII, reach, bring to pass;
mich vervæhet, it is of use *or* advantage to me.

vervluochen, -fluochen, *wv.* curse.

verwāzen, *sv.* VII, ruin; imprecate, curse.

verwēgen, *sv.* V, resolve.

verweinen, *wv.* exhaust by weeping.

verwunden, *wv.* wound.

verwürken (*pret.* **-worhte**), *wv.* lose, forfeit, commit.

verzagen, *wv.* lose courage, withdraw, despair, despond.

verzern, *wv.* consume; destroy.

veste, *sf.* firmness, constancy.

vīant, vīent, vīnt, *sm.* enemy, fiend, [8](#), [42](#).

vier, *num.* four, [62](#).

vier, fier, *aj.* proud, stately, majestic, beautiful;
av. **viere**.

vierde, *num.* fourth, [62](#).

vierzēhen, *num.* fourteen, [62](#).

vierzēhende, *num.* fourteenth, [62](#).

vierzic (-ec), *num.* forty, [62](#).

vierzigeste, *num.* fortieth.

vihe, *sn.* cattle, [46](#).

vil, *aj.* much, many;
av. very;
indecl. sb. c. gen. much, many;
vil wēnic ganz *c. gen.* not at all complete *or* whole.

vinden, finden, *sv.* III, find, [9.4 note](#), [81](#).

vinger, *sm.* finger.

vingerlīn, vingerīn, *sn.* ring, [8](#).

vingerlīnc, *sm.* ring.

vinster, *sf.* darkness, [48](#).

vinster, *aj.* dark, gloomy, [55](#).

vinsternisse, *sfn.* darkness, [8](#).

vint = vindet, [74 note](#).

vīnt, see **vīant**.

vīol, *sm.* violet.

virren, *wv.* keep away from.

visch, *sm.* fish, [11](#), [19](#).

viur, fiuwer, *sn.* fire; lightning.

vlēhen, flēhen (vlēn), *wv.* beseech, implore, [38](#).

vlēhten, *sv.* IV, plait, [82](#).

fleisch, *sn.* flesh.

vliegen, fliegen, *sv.* II, fly, [10 note 3](#), [25](#), [78](#).

vliehen, fliehen, *sv.* II, flee, [18](#), [19](#), [78](#).

vliesen = verliesen.

vliezen, fliezen, *sv.* II, flow, swim; ruin, destroy, [10 note 3](#), [78](#).
vliz, fliz, *sm.* assiduity, zeal, eagerness, care;
ze flize, diligently, carefully.
vlizec, *aj.* diligent, [60.3](#).
vlizecliche(n), *av.* diligently, [60.3](#).
vluht, *sf.* refuge.
flühtesal, *sf.* flight, escape; security.
vluoch (*pl.* **vlüeche**), *sm.* curse.
vogel, *sm.* bird, [9.2](#), [42](#).
vogelin, vogel(l)in, *sn.* little bird, [8](#).
vogelsanc, *sm.* song of birds.
vol (-lles), *aj.* full, [15](#), [31](#).
volc, *sn.* folk, people.
volenden, *wv.* bring to an end.
volgen, *wv.* follow, accompany.
volgesagen, *wv.* tell fully.
volle, *wm.* abundance, completeness.
vollebringen (*pret.* **-brähte**), *wv.* perfect, carry out.
volleclichen, *av.* fully, entirely.
volleist, *sm.* assistance, succour.
von, *prep.* from, away from, with, about, through, by;
von schulden, rightly, properly.
vonme, vomme = von dēme.
vor, *prep.* before, for.
vorbilde, *sn.* pattern, model.
vorder, *aj.* former, front, [59](#).
vordern, *wv.* further, [90](#).
vorderste, *aj.* foremost, [59](#).
vorht, *sf.* fear, dread.
vrāge, *sf.* question.
vrāgen, *wv.* ask, [9.2](#), [92](#).
frävele, *aj.* bold, [10](#).
frēch, *aj.* courageous, daring, bold, brave; saucy, impudent.
freischen, *sv.* VII, come to know, learn, be told.
vreise, freise, *swf.* horror, what is dreadful *or* horrible.
vremde, fremde (vrömde), *aj.* strange, wonderful; unknown.
vremen, *wv.* perform, [31.3](#).
vreude, vrōude, frōide, freude, frōude, *swf.* joy, gladness;
frōuden (*gen. pl.*) **lam**, bereft of joys, pleasures.
vreudelōs, *aj.* joyless.
freuderīche, *aj.* rich in joy, very gratifying.
vreuwen, vrewen, vreun, freuwen, frewen, freun, *wv.* cause to rejoice, rejoice, gladden, give pleasure to, be glad.
 See **vrōuwen**.
vrevel, *sf.* audacity, insolence.
frevellichen, *av.* insolently, boldly, with impudence.
vrēzzen, *sv.* V, devour, [83](#).
vrī, *aj.* free, unrestrained, unmarried.
vrīde, frīde, *sm.* peace, truce; protection, safety, [3](#), [19](#), [43](#).
vrīd(e)lich, *aj.* peaceful.
vrīe, *sf.* freedom.
vrīe, *wm.* freeman.
frīen, frījen, frīgen, *wv.* free, [35](#).
vrīesen, *sv.* II, freeze, [78](#).
vrīsch, frīsch, *aj.* fresh, new.
vrīst, *sf.* time.
vrīsten, *wv.* keep alive, protect, rescue.
vrīundinne, *sf.* female friend, [8](#), [48](#).
vrīunt, frīunt, *sm.* friend, [42](#).
vrō, frō, *aj.* and *av.* glad, joyful.
vrōelich, *aj.* joyful;

av. vrœlichen.
vrömde = *vremde.*
vrömede, *sf.* absence.
frosch, *sm.* frog.
vröuen, vröuwen, fröwen, *wv.* gladden, give pleasure to; be glad, [10](#).
 See **vreuwen**.
vrouwe, frouwe, frowe (**vrou, frou, frō**, before proper names), *wf.* lady, madam, [9.6](#), [10](#);
ze frowen, as wife.
vröuwelin, frouwelin, *sn.* little girl, maid, miss.
vrucht, *sf.* fruit.
vrum, *aj.* brave, active, excellent, useful.
vrumen, frumen, *wv.* benefit, be of use *or* advantage.
vruo, *av.* early.
vüegen, füegen, *wv.* procure, bring to pass; grant.
vüeren, füeren (*pret. fuorte*), *wv.* lead, carry, remove.
fuhs, *sm.* fox, [19](#).
vül, *aj.* bad, rotten.
vülle, *sf.* fulness, [15](#).
füllen, *wv.* fill, [90](#).
funden, *pp.* of **finden**.
vünf, fünf, finf, *num.* five, [19](#), [62](#).
fünfte, finfte, *num.* fifth, [62](#).
vuoge, *sf.* becomingness, decency.
fuore, *sf.* manner of life; way of acting.
vooz, fuoz (*pl. vüeze*), *sm.* foot, [10](#), [44](#).
vür, für, *prep.* and *av.* for, before, over, against;
für guot haben, be content with, put up with;
für iuch, past you;
für sie, past them;
für tören kleit, as fool's clothing;
vür wār, in truth, truly.
vürbaz, fürbaz, *av.* further.
vürhten, fürhten (*pret. vorhte*), *wv.* fear, dread, [15](#), [90](#).
vürnames, *av.* in the full sense of the word.
vürste, fürste, *wm.* prince;
ein din fürste, one of thy princes.
vurt, furt (*pl. fürte*), *sm.* ford, bed of a river.

W

wā, *av.* where, whither, [39](#).
wāc (-ges), *sn.* moving water, flood.
wacker, *aj.* watchful, [31.2](#).
wæjen (wæn), *wv.* blow, [90](#).
wæenen (*pret. wānde*), *wv.* think, fancy, [90](#).
wærlichen, *av.* in truth, truly.
wætlich, *aj.* beautiful.
wætliche, *sf.* beauty.
wāfen, *sn.* weapon, sword.
wāfenen, wāpenen, *wv.* arm, equip, array.
 See **wāpen**.
wage, *wf.* cradle.
wāge, *sf.* balance, scale.
wagen, *sm.* wagon, [49](#).
wahsen, *sv.* VI, grow, [10](#), [85](#).
wal, *sf.* choice, [48](#).
walden, *sv.* VII, have power over.
 See **walten**.
Wāleis, *pn.* Valois in France, inhabitant of Valois.
wallen (*pret. wiel*), *sv.* VII, boil, bubble, [87](#).
walt (-des), *sm.* wood, forest.
walten (with *gen.*), *sv.* VII, have power.

wan, *aj.* empty, bereft of.

wan, *av.* besides, but only;
niht wan, only, nothing but;
wan daz, only that, if—not;
wan unz, whilst, as long as;
wan dēm einen, except for the one.

wan (wande, want), *conj.* for, if, because, then, [9.6](#).

wān, *sm.* faith, hope, mood.

wanc (-kes), *sm.* inconstancy, disloyalty, unfaithfulness, changeableness.

wandel, *smn.* change, fickleness; fault, defect, failing.

wandeln, *wv.* wander, [9.2](#), [90](#).

wange, *wn.* cheek, [50](#).

wängelīn, *sn.* little cheek.

want, *sf.* wall.

wāpen (with sich), *wv.* arm oneself.
 See **wāfenen**.

wāpen, *sn.* weapon, [46](#).

wāpenen, see **wāfenen**.

wāpenroc, *sm.* upper-garment drawn over the coat of mail.

war, *av.* where, whither;
war umbe, wherefore, why;
war zuo, for what purpose.

war, *sf.* attention, observation;
war nēmen, give attention.

wār, *sn.* truth; right;
wār haben, be right.

wār, *aj.* true, right, real.

wārheit, *sf.* truth.

wārinne, *av.* wherein, [39](#).

wärmen, *wv.* to warm, [5](#), [10](#).

warnen, *wv.* equip, prepare.

warten (pret. warte), *wv.* wait; look, view, [9.2](#).

was, wasse, *aj.* sharp, [55](#).

waschen (wischen), *sv.* VI, wash, [85](#).

waste, *sf.* desert.

wāt, *sf.* clothing, dress.

waten, *sv.* VI, wade, [85](#).

waz, *pr.* what, [19](#), [23.1](#), [70](#);
av. why, wherefore.

wē (gen. wēwes), *sn.* woe, pain;
wē tuon, hurt, [17](#), [46](#);
interj. **wehe, wē**, woe! alas!;
mir ist wē, I am sad.

wēben, *sv.* V, weave, [28](#), [83](#).

wēc (-ges), *sm.* way; homeward journey, [5](#), [11](#).

wecken (pret. wacte, wahte), *wv.* awake.

wēder, *pr.* who of two, which of two, [70](#), [71](#);
wēder—noch, neither—nor.

wegen, *wv.* move, swing.

wēgen, *sv.* V, weigh, poise; put in motion, [83](#).

wēhsal (-el), *smn.* change, [8](#).

weich, *aj.* weak.

weideganc (-ges), *sm.* hunting way or path.

weinen (pres. part. weinde for weinende), *wv.* weep, bewail;
 also *sn.*

weise, *wm.* orphan; precious stone in the royal crown.

weizgot, *interj.* verily.

welich, welch, *pr.* which, what kind of, [11](#), [70](#), [71](#).

wellen (pres. sing. wil, pret. wolte), *anom. v.* will, wish, [98](#);
got dēs niht enwelle, may God forbid it.

weln, welen, wellen, *wv.* choose, [90](#).

wenden (pp. gewant), *wv.* with *gen.* turn, prevent, hinder, turn away, [32.3](#).

wēnic, *aj.* little, small;

indecl. sb. c. gen. little.

wenke, *sf.* turning, turn, change.

wenken, *wv.* totter, stagger, waver.

wer, *sf.* defence; protection; battle.

wër, *neut. waz*, *pr.* who, what;
wës, *av.* wherefore, [9.6](#), [70](#).

wërben, *sv.* III, turn, go to and fro, strive, work, be active, [33](#).

wërde, *aj.* worthy, noble.

wërdekeit, **wërdikeit**, *sf.* worthiness, respect, honour, excellence.

wërden, *sv.* III, become, be, be born, [9.4 note](#), [38](#), [81](#);
wërden wol innen, perceive clearly;
wërden buoz, with *dat.* of pers. and *gen.* of thing: **dëm wirt kumbers buoz**, he has compensation for his grief;
wërden rät, *c. gen.* be a remedy.

wërdiclichen, *av.* worthily.

wërffen, *sv.* III, throw, set in quick motion, [10 note](#), [23.2](#), [81](#).

wërlt, **wërelt**, **wëlt**, *sf.* world, people;
dër wërelde riuwe, great sadness *or* grief, lit. sadness of the world.

wërltlich, *aj.* worldly, earthly.

wërlttöre, *wm.* one befooled by the world.

wërltzage, *wm.* arrant coward.

wern (weren), *wv.* check, ward off from, restrain, hinder, [90](#);
c. gen. and *sich*, protect *or* defend oneself against.

wern, *wv.* last, hold out, continue.

wërren (with *dat.*), *sv.* III, perplex, confuse, trouble, disturb, be a hindrance, [81](#).

wërt (-des), *aj.* worthy, noble;
snm. respect, good fortune;
av. **wërde**.

wës (*gen.* of **waz**), *av.* why, wherefore.

wësen, *sv.* V, be, [19](#), [83](#);
wësen gäch, *c. gen.* of person: hasten, exert oneself, eagerly.

wëter, *sn.* weather, [46](#).

wetzen, *wv.* whet, sharpen.

wider (widere), *sm.* wether, [9.2](#).

wider, *prep.* against, to;
av. again, back.

widersagen, *wv.* renounce; proclaim war; contradict.

widerstän, *sv.* VI, resist, withstand, be opposed to.

widervarn, *sv.* VI, fall to the lot of.

widerzæme, *aj.* revolting, hateful, disgusting.

wie, *av.* and *conj.* how, as, that.

wigant (-des), *sm.* warrior, [8](#).

wihen, *wv.* consecrate, bless.

wilde, *aj.* untamed, wild, [55](#).

wile, **wil**, *sf.* time, while;
die wile, meanwhile, in the meantime.

wilen(t), *av.* formerly, once upon a time.

wille, *wm.* will, wish, desire.

willeclich, *aj.* willing, wishing;
av. **willeclichen**.

willekomen, *aj.* and *av.* welcome.

wilt (-des), *sn.* wild animals, game.

win, *sm.* wine, [3](#), [19](#).

winden, *sv.* III, wind, bind up, [81](#).

wine, *sm.* friend.

wint (-des), *sm.* wind, [14.1](#).

winter, *sm.* winter.

wip (-bes), *sn.* woman, wife, [5](#), [11](#).

wipheit, *sf.* womanliness.

wiplich, *aj.* womanly.

wirde, *sf.* worthiness, dignity, honour, honourableness.

wirden, *wv.* make valuable.

wirs, *av.* worse, [61](#).
wirser, *aj.* worse, [58](#).
wirsest, wir(se)ste, *aj.* and *av.* worst, [9.5](#), [58](#), [60](#), [61](#).
wirt, *sm.* head of a house, landlord;
dër helle wirt, devil.
wirtinne, *sf.* mistress, hostess, [8](#).
wīse, wīs, *aj.* wise, sensible, experienced, [28](#).
wīse, wīs, *sf.* manner, melody, song.
wīsen, *wv.* guide, direct.
wīsheit, *sf.* wisdom.
wīslich, *aj.* wisely, [8](#);
av. **wīslichen**.
wīt, *aj.* far, wide.
witze, *sf.* understanding, sense; reflection.
wīz, *aj.* white.
wīzen (with *dat.*), *sv.* I, reproach, blame.
wizzen, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* **weiz**, *pret.* **weste, wiste, wesse, wisse**), know, [5](#), [11](#), [28](#), [92](#).
wol, wole, *av.* well, [5](#), [9.1](#), [61](#);
wolgezogen, well-mannered;
wol getān, beautiful;
wol im, happy *or* lucky is he!;
wol dir, hail to thee;
wol mich, happy am I!;
wol tuon, *c. dat.* do good, please;
wol ir dēs, good luck to her for that!
wolf, *sm.* wolf, [15](#).
wolken, *sn.* cloud.
wolle, *wf.* wool, [15](#).
wollust, *smf.* joy, bliss, happiness.
wonen, *wv.* dwell, live, [9.4](#);
mir wont bi, I possess.
wort, *sn.* word, speech, [46](#).
wüllin, wullin, *aj.* woollen, [15](#).
wülpinne, *sf.* she-wolf, [15](#).
wunde, *wf.* wound.
wunder, *sn.* wonder, marvel; a great amount *or* number, abundance;
bluomen wunder, a great quantity of flowers.
wunderalt, *aj.* very old.
wundern, *wv.* wonder, wonder at, admire, [9.2](#).
wünne, wunne, *sf.* joy, pleasure, [10 note 2](#).
wünneclīch, wunneclīch, *aj.* joyful, delightful, beautiful, pleasant;
av. **wünneclīche(n)**.
wunsch, *sm.* wish, ideal, perfection, highest perfection.
wünschen (with *gen.*), *wv.* wish, desire, [90](#).
wunschleben, *sn.* such a life as one could wish for.
wunt (-des), *aj.* wounded.
wuof, *sm.* cry of woe.
wuofen, *sv.* VII, bewail, [87](#).
würgen, *wv.* take by the throat, choke, throttle.
würken, wurken (*pret.* **worhte**), *wv.* work, [28](#), [91](#).
wurm, *sm.* worm, snake, [5](#).
wurze, *wf.* root, plant.
wurzel, *swf.* root.

Z

zageheit, *sf.* cowardice.
zاهر, *sm.* tear, [5](#), [10](#).
zal, *sf.* number, [9.1](#), [31.3](#), [48](#).
zant, zan (*gen.* **zandes**), *sm.* tooth, [43](#).
ze (zuo), *prep.* at, in, to, as much as, (undergoes contraction with the def. art.);
ze bruoder, as brother;
ze rēhte, rightly, properly;

ze handen haben, possess;
av. too: **ze sēre**, too much.

zebrēchen, zerbrēchen, *sv.* IV, break, break in pieces.

zehant, *av.* at once, on the spot.

zēhe, *wf.* toe.

zēhen, *num.* ten, [5](#), [62](#).

zēhente (-de), *num.* tenth, [62](#).

zēhenzic (-ec), hundred, [62](#).

zēhenzigeste, *num.* hundredth, [62](#).

zeichen, *sn.* sign, mark, token, [23](#), [1](#).

zeigen, *wv.* show, [33](#).

zeim = ze einem(e).

zeln, *wv.* reckon, count, [31.3](#), [90](#).

zēme, zēm = ze dēme, [68 note 2](#).

zēmen, *sv.* IV, suit, be becoming *or* fitting, [82](#).

zēn = ze dēn, [68 note 2](#).

zēr = ze dēr, [68 note 2](#).

zergān, -gēn, *sv.* VII, vanish, stop, perish.

zerren (*pret.* **zarte**), *wv.* pull, tug, tear.

zerwirken (*pp.* **zerworht**), *wv.* cut up, dissect.

zesamene, *av.* together.

zēse (-wes), *aj.* right.

zestunt, *av.* on the spot.

zeswēllen, *sv.* III, swell to the utmost.

zewāre, zwār, *av.* in truth, truly.

ziehen, *sv.* II, draw;
refl. withdraw, [10](#), [23.1](#), [30](#), [78](#).

zierde, *sf.* adornment, [9.2](#).

zieren, *wv.* adorn, decorate.

zīhen, *sv.* I, accuse, [76](#).

zil, *sn.* aim, object.

zimieren, *wv.* furnish with knightly accoutrements.

zinsen, *wv.* give as interest, give away.

zir = ze ir.

zirke, *wm.* garland, circle, prince's crown.

zirkel, *sm.* prince's crown.

zīt, *sf.* time, [19](#).

zobel, *sm.* robe furred with sable.

zorn, *sm.* anger.

zorneclīche, *av.* angrily, violently.

zücken (*pret.* **zuhte**), *wv.* pull quickly, tear.

zuht, *sf.* bringing up, education; good manners, politeness, demeanour; chastisement, punishment;
mit zūhten, becomingly, gracefully, politely.

zūhtelōs, *aj.* ill-bred, rude, insolent.

zunft, *sf.* propriety, dignity, good breeding.

zunge, *wf.* tongue, [3](#), [7](#), [23.2](#), 53

zuo, *av.* to, toward; to it;
zuo zwein, into two.
 See **ze**.

zuome = zuo dēme.

zürnen, zurnen, *wv.* be angry.

zwei, *num.* two, [35](#), [62](#), [63](#).

zweien with **sich**, *wv.* fall out, quarrel; pair.

zweinzic (-ec), *num.* twenty, [62](#).

zweinigeste, *num.* twentieth, [62](#).

zwelf, *num.* twelve, [62](#).

zwelfte, *num.* twelfth, [62](#).

zwene, zwei, zwō (*gen.* **zweier, zweiger**, *dat.* **zwein**), two, [35](#), [63](#).

zwī, zwic (*gen.* **zwīges, zwīes**), *smn.* twig, bough, [35](#).

zwīfeln, *wv.* doubt, [9.2](#).

zwischen, *prep.* between.

zwīvel, zwīfel, *sm.* doubt, uncertainty;
aj. doubtful, 55.

zwīvellich, *aj.* doubtful, uncertain, dejected.

zwīvellop (-bes), doubtful *or* ambiguous praise.

Paragraph 88 Table

A few other inflectional tables were similarly reformatted.

	<i>Present.</i>		
	CLASS I	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
Indic. sing.	-u, -is(t), -it	-ōn, -ōs(t), -ōt	-ēn, -ēs(t), -ēt
„ plur.	-ēn, -et, -ent	-ōn, -ōt, -ōnt	-ēn, -ēt, -ēnt
Subj. sing.	-e, -ēs(t), -e	-o, -ōs(t), -o	-e, -ēs(t), -e
„ plur.	-ēn, -ēt, -ēn	-ōn, -ōt, -ōn	-ēn, -ēt, ēn
Imper. sing.	-i	-o	-e
plur.	-ēn, -et	-ōn, -ōt	-ēn, -ēt

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK A MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN PRIMER ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg™ License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg™ electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg™ electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg™ electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in

the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg™ works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg™ name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg™ License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg™ work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg™ License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg™ work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg™ trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg™ License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg™ License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg™.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg™ work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg™ website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg™ License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg™ works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg™ works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive

Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any

Project Gutenberg™ work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg™ work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg™

Project Gutenberg™ is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg™'s goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg™ collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg™ and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg™ concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg™ eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg™ eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg™, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.